

МИНИСТЕРСТВО ЗДРАВООХРАНЕНИЯ РЕСПУБЛИКИ БЕЛАРУСЬ  
БЕЛОРУССКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ МЕДИЦИНСКИЙ УНИВЕРСИТЕТ  
КАФЕДРА ЛАТИНСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

**А. З. Цисык**

# ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

## THE LATIN LANGUAGE

Рекомендовано Учебно-методическим объединением  
по медицинскому образованию Республики Беларусь в качестве  
учебно-методического пособия для студентов учреждений  
высшего образования по специальности 1-79 01 07 «Стоматология»



Минск БГМУ 2013

УДК 811.124(811.111)-054.6 (075.8)  
ББК 81.2 Лат.-923  
Ц73

Рецензенты: канд. филол. наук, доц., зав. каф. иностранных языков  
М. Н. Петрова; канд. филол. наук, доц. каф. латинского языка Л. С. Капитула

**Цисык, А. З.**

Ц73 Латинский язык = The Latin Language : учеб.-метод. пособие / А. З. Цисык. –  
Минск : БГМУ, 2013. – 168 с.

ISBN 978-985-528-873-3.

Издание состоит из фонетического раздела и трех основных разделов учебного материала — анатомического, фармацевтического и клинического. Каждый раздел содержит теоретическую и практическую части, латинско-английский и английско-латинский словарь.

Предназначено для иностранных студентов стоматологического факультета, изучающих дисциплину «Латинский язык» на английском языке.

УДК 811.124(811.111)-054.6 (075.8)  
ББК 81.2 Лат.-923

---

Учебное издание

**Цисык Андрей Зиновьевич**

**ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК**

**THE LATIN LANGUAGE**

Учебно-методическое пособие  
На английском языке

Ответственный за выпуск А. З. Цисык  
Переводчик А. З. Цисык  
Компьютерный набор З. В. Позняк  
Компьютерная верстка Н. М. Федорцовой

Подписано в печать 30.05.13. Формат 60×84/16. Бумага писчая «Снегурочка».

Ризография. Гарнитура «Times».

Усл. печ. л. 9,76. Уч.-изд. л. 7,7. Тираж 70 экз. Заказ 619.

Издатель и полиграфическое исполнение:  
учреждение образования «Белорусский государственный медицинский университет».  
ЛИ № 02330/0494330 от 16.03.2009.  
Ул. Ленинградская, 6, 220006, Минск.

**ISBN 978-985-528-873-3**

© Цисык А. З., 2013  
© УО «Белорусский государственный  
медицинский университет», 2013

## PREFACE

This manual is meant for English-speaking students studying at the Faculties of Stomatology at medical universities of the Republic of Belarus. Its structure corresponds to the syllabus presented in the State Educational Standard Plan for the subject “The Latin Language” taught in the medical universities at the Faculties of Stomatology. The manual has been composed in accordance with generally accepted patterns expressed in well-known manuals and textbooks of Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology.

The manual is divided into four parts — phonetics, the anatomical part with the main grammar rules, the pharmaceutical part and the clinical one.

Every lesson, as it is generally known, has a uniform structure: checking the home task (orally and in writing), some explanation of new topic, students’ work with exercises. The manual contains all necessary components for this work — grammar and terminological material, as well as exercises. In the latter, words are given in alphabetical order, and every lesson is provided with Latin-English and English-Latin glossaries. Such a distribution of educational material should help students in their work with exercises.

According to high school norms of studying linguistic subjects, students are to learn 30–40 new words at every lesson, although this word memorizing can be managed naturally only due to strenuous efforts to do the homework. But then, this work is constantly facilitated by lexical affinity of equivalent words in Latin and English.

The main attention is paid to the anatomical and clinical terms, as namely these terms are and will be mainly needed in daily medical practice of foreign students. That’s why the pharmaceutical part of the manual is presented quite concisely. As to clinical terms, on the basis of well-known English medical dictionaries we sought to give the scientific definition of each terminological unit. Such an introduction into professional terminology juggling by the students’ reaction has always been of great interest to them.

The subject “Medical Latin” is mastered and controlled chiefly in written form. So both proper spelling and grammar arrangement are of great value as spoken Latin is very simple. That’s why control tests at every lesson as well as summing up are performed only in written form.

The students should bear in mind, that only systematic work on the topic and vocabulary of every lesson on their own can result in success.

## INTRODUCTION INTO THE SUBJECT

The subject you are going to study is the Latin Language. To some point, this name is relative, because nowadays there are no people speaking Latin. From the school course of world history you can remember, that many centuries ago, where nowadays Italy is, there was the Roman Empire. The Roman state which included many lands and people existed till 464 A.D. And initially, Rome was a small town, founded by an Italian tribe in 753 B.C. and Latin was its native language. Gradually, century after century, Rome became the most powerful state of the Mediterranean and Latin was widespread and acknowledged.

An event of tremendous historical importance for both Rome and the future of European culture was the Roman conquest of Greece, the motherland of European culture and science. The Greek physician Hippocrates is namely considered to be the founder of European scientific medicine. Hippocrates and other Greek physicians made a great contribution into the development of medicine, that's why Greek medicine was extremely popular and prestigious among the population of the Mediterranean area. For this reason, Greek medical terms were borrowed into Latin and came into use in different countries. So originally the European medical terminology was formed on the basis of Greek and Latin words.

In the new history of Europe, beginning with the Roman state's collapse, the Latin language was used for 1000 years as the language of state establishments, Catholic religion, education and science, especially at universities founded in the 12<sup>th</sup> century. Every university would have a medical faculty. Diplomas and theses as well as the process of education itself were in Latin. As to medicine, Latin became the international professional language of physicians. Medical terms rooting from Latin and Greek are presented in any European language as borrowings. What's more, there exist lists of biological and medical terms, forming the so-called Nomenclatures, approved at the International Congresses of scientists — anatomical, histological, microbiological etc. Latin terms of those nomenclatures are used in education and scientific literature. That's why future doctors must study fundamentals of international medical terminology, based on Latin grammar and Latin and Greek word building elements (roots, stems and affixes).

Among modern European languages English, and, particularly, medical English, contains a great number of Latin and Latinized Greek words. It becomes evident when comparing medical glossaries of Latin and English. To prove this compare some medical terms in Latin and English.

<b>Latin anatomical terms</b>	<b>English equivalents</b>
abdomen	abdomen
canalis	canal
cardiacus	cardiac
cavitas	cavity
lobus	lobe
longus	long
nasalis	nasal
tonsilla	tonsil

<b>Latin pharmaceutical terms</b>	<b>English equivalents</b>
Acidum aceticum	acetic acid
aether	ether
cortex	cortex
dilutus	diluted
Oleum Eucalypti	Eucalyptus oil
herba	herb
pilula	pill
tinctura	tincture

<b>Latin clinical terms</b>	<b>English equivalents</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
allergicus	allergic	caused by or affected with allergy
aneurysma	aneurism	a localized dilatation of the walls of a blood vessel, usually an artery
cancerophobia	cancerophobia	fear of cancer
cholecystogramma	cholecystogram	results of gallbladder X-ray examination
gnathoschisis	gnathoschisis	a congenital fissure in the maxilla
granuloma	granuloma	a tumor composed of granulation tissue
odontalgia	odontalgia	a painful condition affecting a tooth, tooth-ache
stomatomycosis	stomatomycosis	any morbid condition of the mouth which is caused by a morbid fungus

As we see, in clinical terminology using Latin terms is particularly preferable, because one Latin word can change the whole group of English words, expressing some pathological phenomenon.

The proximity of medical terms in Latin and English can be explained very simply: it is well known, that English medical terminology developed from Medieval Latin terminology, which had absorbed ancient Latin and Greek medical lexical units. Both Latin and ancient Greek is an inexhaustible source

for a new term building, and this process keeps on going. Everybody striving to become a doctor among them stomatologist has to master Latin and fundamentals of international medical Terminology.

The course of Latin at the Medical University you are going to study consists of 3 main parts, which correspond to the main groups of medical terminology: anatomical (and partly histological), pharmaceutical and clinical ones. This material is learned in the course of a academic term (semester); each lesson is once a week. Each new lesson includes your teacher's explanation of the topic of the lesson, but the main bulk of work for you is your home task. A specific feature of studying is written control of checking home task preparation at every lesson. Besides this regular test control, 3 written tests (for 90 minutes) are provided. The purpose of these tests is to control the knowledge of the entire material of each part of the course. There exist uniform (for all groups and teachers) rules of the control assessment and you will be acquainted with them. So, at every lesson, you will first work orally, checking the home task with your teacher, and then your knowledge will be controlled in written form (while books and notebooks are closed). The principal way to this knowledge is your own persistent work with your textbook memorizing Latin words and rules of its grammar. And, without doubt, every student can succeed in learning Latin and fundamentals of medical Terminology, if his or her efforts are steady and diligent.

# Part I

## PHONETIC RULES OF PRONUNCIATION

### Lesson 1

#### ALPHABET IN LATIN. THE PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS, CONSONANTS AND LETTER COMBINATIONS. ACCENT RULES

#### § 1. Latin alphabet

The Latin alphabet includes 25 letters.

Letters	Names	Latin Pronunciation	Latin examples and their transcription	English equivalents
A a	a [ʌ]	[a]	vas [vʌs]	vessel
B b	be [be]	[b]	bulbus [bú:lbus]	bulb
C c	tse [tse]	[ts] [k]	coccyx [kó:ktsiks]	coccyx, coccygeal bone
D d	de [de]	[d]	dens [dens]	tooth
E e	e [e]	[e]	vertebra [vé:rtebrʌ]	vertebra
F f	ef [ef]	[f]	frontalis [fronta:lis]	frontal
G g	ge [ge]	[g]	genu [gé:nu]	knee
H h	ha [hʌ]	[h like English heart, here]	hepar [hé:pʌr]	liver
I i	i [i]	[i]	incisura [incizú:rʌ]	incisure
J j	yot [jot]	[j] like English yes, you	jugularis [juguláris]	jugular
K k	ka [kʌ]	[k]	skeleton [ské:leton]	skeleton
L l	el [el]	l [as in English life, love]	cellula [tsé:llulʌ]	cell
M m	em [em]	[m]	mors [mors]	death
N n	en [en]	[n]	nodus [nó:dus]	node
O o	o [o]	[o]	coronarius [coronárius]	coronary
P p	pe [pe]	[p]	palpebra [pálpebrʌ]	eyelid
Q q	ku [ku]	[kv] together with vowel u and vowel a, e, i, o, u after u	Quercus [kvé:rkus] quartus [kvá:rtus]	oak fourth
R r	er [er]	[r]	renalis [rená:lis]	renal
S s	es [es]	[s] [z]	sinus [sí:nus] incisura [intsizú:rʌ]	sinus, hollow incisure
T t	te [te]	[t] [ts]	tibia [tí:biʌ] articulatio [artikulá:tsio]	tibia, shine-bone articulation, joint

Letters	Names	Latin Pronunciation	Latin examples and their transcription	English equivalents
U u	u [u]	u	succus [sú:kkus]	juice
V v	ve [ve]	v	valva [vá:lvΛ]	valve
X x	iks [iks]	ks	dexter [dé:kster]	right, right-hand
Y y	Ipsilon [ípsilon]	i	gyrus [gí:rus]	gyrus, convolution
Z z	zeta [zétΛ]	z	zygomaticus [zigomátikus]	zygomatic

The last two letters, borrowed by Romans from Greek alphabet, are used, as a rule, in the words of Greek origin.

## § 2. Division of Latin sounds

Six letters of the alphabet (a, e, i, o, u, y) correspond to vowels and nineteen (b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z) denote consonants.

## § 3. Pronunciation of vowels

Vowels in Latin, except “y”, sound practically the same, as the sounds of their names in the alphabet (see above). So, the letter “a” sounds [a], the letter e — sounds [e] and so on. One may add that the stressed vowel corresponds in pronunciation to a long one in English, compare:

cavitas [cá:vitΛs] — cavity

apertura [Λpertú:rΛ] — aperture, opening

venosus [venó:zus] — venous

tonsilla [tonsí:llΛ] — tonsil

The letter “y” (ípsilon) sounds as the Latin letter “i” (that’s why the Frenchman call y “igrek”, i. e. “the Greek “i”):

tympanum [tí:mpanum] — drum

All the above given examples also indicate, that Latin vowels don’t practically change their sound quality in different syllables. But the vowel “i” placed before the vowels “a”, “e”, “o”, “u” when making a common syllable with them, changes its sound characteristics: now it sounds similar to the English vowel “y” in the yard, yours, yourself, youthful, let’s compare:

maialis [mΛjá:lis] — referring to May

ieiunum [jejú:num] — jejunum

major [má:jor] — greater

As in such cases the letter “i” sounds different compared to the vowel “i”, the scientists in the XVI century decided to introduce a new letter **j** into the Latin alphabet, so as to substitute the vowel “i”: majalis, jejunum, major and so on. It is common to use the letter “j” in medical and biological terms. Let’s, however, note that in the terms of the Greek origin the vowel “i” never makes

a syllable with the subsequent vowels “a”, “e”, “o”, “u” and therefore the letter j cannot be used:

iater [iá:ter] physician, commonly geriater, paediat(er), psychiater, phthisiater and so on — these terms will be discussed in the clinical part of our course. We can also mention the noun Iodum [iód:dum] — iodine (Latin names of chemical elements are to be written with capital letters).

#### § 4. Pronunciation of two vowel combination

Two vowels following each other can form the so-called diphthong that is pronounced as a combination of two vowels pronounced in one syllable.

So **au** [au] is pronounced as in the English words down, sound, south, compound and so on:

auris [áuris] — ear, caudalis [kaudá:lis] — caudal, trauma [tráuma] — injury, wound.

Eu [eu] has no analogue in English, so its pronunciation must be learnt by the spelling memorizing. So, we have to pronounce this vowels combination as one syllable when stressing a little its first part [éu], for example:

pneumonia [pneumonía] — pneumonia

Eucalyptus [eukalíptus] — eucalyptus

However, you should pay attention to the letter combination “**eu**” at the end of words, where it doesn’t make a diphthong and each vowel is pronounced separately:

sigmoideus [sigmoí:deus] — sigmoid

corpus luteum [kó:rpus lú:teum] — corpus luteum (yellow body)

Two vowels can also form a digraph, which sounds like the Latin vowel “**e**”:

ae – [e] — costae [kó:ste] — ribs

oe – [e] — oedema [edé:m] — swelling

If each vowel in such digraphs is to be pronounced separately, two dots are placed over the letter e:

aër [á:er] — air, Aloë (names of medical plants are to be written in Latin with the capital letter) [á:loe] — aloe.

#### § 5. Pronunciation of consonants

Consonants **b, d, f, h, k, m, n, p, q, s, t, v, x** are similar in pronouncing to English. The difference is that consonants **p, t, k** are not aspirated, as in English. Pronunciation of the rest consonants is to be explained.

The letter **Cc** before the vowels “e”, “i”, “y” and digraphs “ae”, “oe” is pronounced as [ts], but before the vowels “a”, “o”, “u” and consonants (except h) is pronounced as [k]:

cervicalis [tserviká:lis] — cervical

caecum [tsé:kum] — caecum

coccyx [kó:ktsiks] — coccyx, cockerel bone

The letter **Gg** is always pronounced like [g] in English **get, glass, disguise:**

gaster [gá:ster] — stomach

genu [gé:nu] — knee

vagina [vΛgí:nΛ] — vagina

The letter **Hh** is pronounced approximately as the letter **h** in English:

homo [hó:mo] — man

hoyoideus [hioí:deus] — sublingual

The letter **Ll** is pronounced in some way softer than in English and is palatalized both before vowels and consonants (as in the pronunciation of such English words as **look** and **live**):

albus [á:lbus] — white

cellula [tsé:llulΛ] — cell

palatinus [pΛlΛtínus] — palatine

pyloricus [piló:rikus] — pyloric

The letter **Rr** in Latin is pronounced always clearly and distinctly not as the English **Rr** [a:]

dexter [dé:xter] — right

posterior [posté:rior] — back

renalis [rená:lis] — renal

The letter **Ss** between two vowels is pronounced like [z], in other cases — as [s]:

basis [bá:zis] — base

sinus [sí:nus] — sinus, hollow

The letter **Tt** is commonly pronounced as [t] without aspiration: tinctura [tinktú:rΛ] — tincture. But in such a letter combination, where “**T**” follows “**t**” plus some other vowel, “**t**” is pronounced as [ts]:

articulatio [artikulá:tsio] — joint

protuberantia [protuberá:ntsia] — protuberance

There is, however, an exception from this last rule: if before the combination **ti** + vowel the consonants “**s**” or “**x**” are placed, then the pronunciation of **ti** is [ti]:

digestio [digé:stio] — digestion

ostium [ó:stium] — orifice.

The letter **Zz** is pronounced as [z]:

zona [zó:nΛ] — zone

horizontalis [horizontá:lis] — horizontal

But in two cases we pronounce this letter as [ts]: influenza [influé:ntsΛ] — grippus, influenza and Zincum [tsí:nkum] — zink.

## § 6. Pronunciation of consonant combinations

Two consonants can form a digraph, which is pronounced as a consonant:

**ch** is pronounced as [kh]:

charta [khá:rtΛ] — paper

chorda [khó:rdΛ] — cord;

**ph** is pronounced as [f]:

lymphaticus [limfá:ticus] — lymphatic

pharynx [fá:rinks] — pharynx

**rh** is pronounced as [r]:

rhinorrhagia [rinoragí:a] — rhinorrhagia (nasal bleeding)

rhomboideus [romboí:deus] — rhomboid

**th** is pronounced as [t]:

thorax [tó:raks] — chest

labyrinthus [lΛbirí:ntus] — labyrinth

The combination of three consonants **sch** is pronounced as [skh]:

schema [skhé:mΛ] — scheme

ischadicus [iskhiá:dikus] — sciatic

## § 7. Pronunciation of some letter combinations

The letter combination **ngu** is pronounced as [ngv], if the vowel “**u**” is followed by one of the vowels “**a**”, “**e**”, “**i**”, “**u**”:

lingua [li:ngvΛ] — tongue, language

unguentum [ungvé:ntum] — ointment

unguis [ú:ngvis] — nail

But if a consonant follows “**u**”, then **ngu** is pronounced as [ngu]:

angulus [á:ngulus] — angle

lingula [lí:ngulΛ] — lingula, little tongue

The letter combination **qu** with a following vowel (**a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**) is pronounced as [kv] with a subsequent vowel:

squamosus [skvamó:zus] — squamosal

aqueductus [akvedú:tus] — aqueduct

Quercus [kvé:rkus] — oak

## § 8. Stressing rules in the words consisting of two syllables

If a word consists of two syllables, there is always only one stress: the first syllable is stressed:

cós-ta, lá-rynx, nér-vus

## § 9. Stressing rules in the polysyllabic words. Length and brevity of the second end syllable

In polysyllabic words consisting of three and more syllables, the second or third syllables from the end of the word can be stressed. The stress depends on the length or brevity of the second word end syllable: if it is long, it is stressed, if it is short, it cannot be stressed and then the third word end syllable is stressed.

The length and brevity of the second syllable and particularly in textbooks are usually marked by special signs: a short line is placed over the vowel if it is long, and a little arch — if it is short, compare:

ā – ǎ, ē – ě, ī – ě, ō – ǒ, ū – ů, ŷ – ǎ.

So, if we find such words as forāmen, incisūra, hepatītis etc. in the dictionary, we can instantly determine that such words have an accent on the second syllable from the end.

If in the dictionary we see such words as lamīna, encephālon, thoracīcus etc., we understand that the third syllable from the end must be stressed: lámīna, encéphalon, thorácicus.

Now, we should ask a crucial question: do we have to consult the dictionary about the quality of the second end syllable in every case or not? Fortunately, there exist some rules helping us to determine at once the length or brevity of the second end syllable, or more simply, of the second end vowel. First of all, the suffixes containing vowels which are long or short by nature, calling the suffixes accordingly “long” or “short”, can give us guidance about the length or brevity of the second end vowel.

## § 10. Long suffixes

Before listing the suffixes, one must notice, that part of these suffixes is always long or short in all kinds of terminology — anatomical, pharmaceutical, clinical. As we are going to begin with anatomical terminology and continue studying it during the fifth semester, it would be proper to begin with the suffixes in anatomical terms.

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions and their translation
-āl-	dentālis horizontālis	dental horizontal	encephālon (brain)
-ār-	articulāris mandibulāris	auricular mandibular	
-āt-	caudātus meātus	caudate passage	

<b>Suffixes</b>	<b>Examples</b>	<b>English equivalents</b>	<b>Exceptions and their translation</b>
-īn-	palatīnus vagīna	palatine vagina, sheath	lamīna (lamine), femīna (women), retīna (retina), dens serotīnus (wisdom tooth), nervus trigemīnus (trigeminal nerve), termīnus (term)
-īv-	gingīva dens incisīvus	gingiva, gum incisor tooth	
-ōs-	aponeurōsis petrōsus	aponeurosis stony	
-ūr-	incisūra sutūra	incisure, slit or notch suture, line of junction	

### § 11. Short suffixes

<b>Suffixes</b>	<b>Examples</b>	<b>English equivalents</b>	<b>Exceptions</b>
-iāc-	cardiācus coeliācus	cardiac coeliac	
-īc-	gastrīcus tunīca	gastric tunic, coat	vesīca ( bladder)
-ōl-	alveōlus foveōla	alveolus, sachet (tooth) foveola	
-ūl-	clavicūla mandibūla	clavicle mandible	

### § 12. Suffixes with similar quality of vowel in all parts of medical terminology

As mentioned above, some suffixes can always be long or short in all parts of medical terminology, compare:

<b>Suffix</b>	<b>Anatomical terms</b>	<b>Pharmaceutical terms</b>	<b>Clinical terms</b>
-āt-	musculū levātor (levator muscle)	Aqua destillāta (distilled water)	Caries exacerbāta (caries exacerbated)
-ōs-	aponeurōsis (aponeurosis)	spirituōsus (spirituous)	erythrocytōsis (erythrocytosis, increased account of red blood cells in the blood)
-ūr-	junctūra (juncture, junction)	tinctūra (tincture)	fractura (fracture)
-ūl-	angūlus (angle)	Betūla (birch)	furuncūlus (furuncle, boil)

### § 13. The way of accent determination when the second end vowel isn't a part of a long or a short suffix

In many words the second vowel from the word end is placed before a consonant, but this vowel is not a part of a common long or short suffix. In such cases we can determine its length or brevity controlling those peculiarities of the given word in the textbook vocabulary, compare:

forāmen (opening), orbīta (eye-socket), skelēton (skeleton), suprēmus (highest), tuberositas (tuberosity), urēter (ureter)) and so on.

### § 14. Some rules of syllable length determining

In some cases we can determine the syllable length or brevity with the help of certain rules.

1. The syllable is long, when its vowel is placed before two or more consonants:

ligamentum (ligament)  
maxilla (maxilla, upper jaw)  
sinister (left)

But, when the vowel is short by nature (it is shown in the dictionary) and it is placed before two consonants, first of which being **b, c, d, g, p, t** and the second is **l** or **r**, this short vowel is pronounced short:

vertēbra (vertebra), cerēbrum (cerebrum), os triquētrum (triquetrum bone), multīplex (multiple). And when this vowel is long by nature, our rule is valid:  
cicātrix (cicatrix, scar), psychiātri (psychiatrists), salūbris (curative).

2. The syllable is long, when it includes the diphthongs **au, eu** or digraphs **ae, oe**: amoeba (ameba), diaeta (diet), Althaea (althea).

3. The syllable is long, when its vowel is placed before the consonants **x** or **z**:  
reflēxus (reflex), Oryza (rise).

### § 15. The rules of syllable brevity

1. The syllable is short, when its vowel is placed before another vowel:

linēa (line), superīor (higher, upper)  
cornūa (horns), Aluminīum (aluminium)

There are, however, two points of exceptions from this rule:

1) in some words of Greek origin the last but one vowel was formed from the digraph **ae**, that's why it keeps the length of the syllable:

coccygaeus → coccygēus  
peritonaeum → peritonēum

You have to memorize these exceptions:

perinēum (perineum, fork) peritonēum (peritoneum), trachēa (trachea), anconēus (anconeus muscle), coccygēus (coccygeal), esophagēus (esophageal), glutēus (gluteal), laryngēus (laryngeal), meningēus (meningeal), peronēus (peroneal, fibular), pharyngēus (pharyngeal).

2) in clinical terms with the ending **-ia** their vowel **i** and syllable with it are stressed:

dyskinesía (dyskinesia, disturbance of movement), otoscopía (otoscopy, internal examination of the ear).

Some peculiarities of this exception will be discussed in the clinical part of our course.

2. The syllable is short, when its vowel is placed before digraphs **ch, ph, rh, th**:

ductus choledōchus (bile duct)

odontolīthus (odontolith, calculus of the teeth)

## § 16. Exercises

**1. Read the following words paying special attention to the vowel pronunciation:**

forámen (opening), ligaméntum (ligament), dúctus (duct), interlobuláris (interlobular), longitudínalis (longitudinal), massetéricus (masticatory, chewing), pylóricus (pyloric), synoviális (synovial), tympánicus (tympanic), sínister (left), zygomáticus (zygomatic)

**2. Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letter c:**

caput (head), cervicális (cervical), cérebrum (brain), cútis (skin), Ácidum acéticum (acetic acid), síccus (dry), fácies (face, surface), coccygēus (coccygeal), coerúleus (blue), caécum (caecum), búccae (cheeks), carcinóma (cancer), sáccus lacrimális (lacrimal sac)

**3. Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letters g and q:**

nérvus hypoglóssus (hypoglossal nerve), gánglion pterygopalatínium (pterygopalatine ganglion), rámi gingiváles (gingival branches), gánglion geniculátum (geniculate ganglion), gýrus anguláris (angular gyrus), húmor aquósus (aqueous humor), aquedúctus vestibuli (vestibular aqueduct), cósta quinta (fifth rib), márgo squamósus (squamosal border)

**4. Read correctly the following words, paying special attention to the consonants j, s and t:**

ála májor (major wing), flexúra duodenojejunális (duodenojejunal flexure), júga alveolária (alveolar yokes), articulátio compósita (complex joint), óstium atrioventriculáre dextrum (right atrioventricular orifice), incisúra juguláris

(jugular notch), segmentum basale anterius (anterior basal segment), basis ossis sacri (base of sacrum), mixtio pro potione (mixture for drinking).

**5. Read correctly the following words paying attention to combinations of vowels:**

costae spuriae (false ribs), foramen caecum linguae (caecum foramen of tongue), Oleum Eucalypti (eucalyptus oil), oedema laryngis (edema of larynx), nervus auricularis (auricular nerve), aponeurosis linguae (lingual aponeurosis), cellulae haematopoeticae (hematogenic cells), glandulae oesophageae (oesophageal glands), pneumonia migrans (migratory pneumonia).

**6. Read attentively the following words with vowel and consonant combinations:**

nervus ischiadicus (sciatic nerve), Strophanthinum (strophanthine), Synthomycinum (synthomycin), febris haemorrhagica (hemorrhagic fever), raphe pharyngis (pharyngeal raphe), asthma bronchiale (bronchial asthma), vertebrae thoracicae (thoracic vertebrae), unguentum ophthalmicum (ophthalmic ointment), labyrinthus ethmoidalis (ethmoidal labyrinth), Methylenum coeruleum (blue methylen), rhizoma Glycyrrhizae (rhizome of licorice), Schizandra chinensis (chinense magnolia vine), sectiones hypothalami (sections of hypothalamus), ductus choledochus (common bile duct), truncus brachiocephalicus (brachiocephalic trunk), distantia trochanterica (trochanteric distance), hemisphaerium cerebelli (hemisphere of cerebellum), tuberculum pharyngeum (pharyngeal tubercle), vena saphena (saphenous vein), cirrhosis hepatis (biliary cirrhosis typhus abdominalis (abdominal typhus), nephrolithiasis chronica (chronic nephrolithiasis), foetor ex ore seu halitosis (fetid or offensive breath or halitosis)

**7. Determine the stress syllable, paying attention to the long and short suffixes:**

incisura ethmoidalis (ethmoidal notch), tuberculum jugulare (jugular tubercle), lingua sphenoidalis (sphenoidal lingula), semicanalis tubae auditivae (canal for auditory tube), meatus acusticus externus (external acoustic meatus), lamina perpendicularis (perpendicular plate), facies palatina (palatine surface), vesica biliaris (gallbladder), glandulae endocrinae (endocrine glands), juncturae cinguli pelvici (joints of pelvic girdle), urethra masculina (male urethra), spina scapulae (spine of scapula), intestinum tenue (small intestine), alveolus dentalis (tooth socket), tunica mucosa linguae (mucous membrane of tongue), arcus dentalis mandibularis (mandibular dental arcade), trigonum submandibulare (submandibular triangle)

**8. Determine the stress syllable, paying attention to the natural length or brevity of the last but one vowel:**

tuberculum anterius (anterior tubercle), incisurae costales (costal slits), vertebra thoracica (thoracic vertebra), ductus choledochus (bile duct), foramen apicis radialis dentis (apical foramen of the root of the tooth), vesica urinaria

(urinary bladder), Oleum Ricini (castor oil), Sirūpus Rubi idaei (raspberry syrup), Solutio Iōdi spirituōsa (iodine spirituous solution), eczēma allergĭcum (allergic eczema), stomatĭtis chronĭca (chronic stomatitis), systēma condūcens cordis (conducting system of heart), apertūra thorācis inferior (lower opening of chest), muscŭlus levātor fornĭcis (muscle raising fornix), Tinctūra Valeriānae (tincture of valerian), facies anterior partis petrōsae (anterior surface of petrous part), canāles palatīni minōres (lesser palatine canals), systēma lymphoideum (lymphoid system)

**9. Write down the terms, put the signs of length or brevity over the last but one syllable (using vocabularies if necessary) and determine in writing the accent:**

ligamentum popliteum obliquum (oblique popliteal ligament), cartilago thyreoidea (thyroid cartilage), bifurcatio tracheae (bifurcation of trachea), musculus anconeus (anconeus muscle), atrium meatus medii (atrium of middle meatus), Extractum Crataegi fluidum (liquid extract of hawthorn), paralysis congenita (congenital paralysis), syndromum immunodeficientiae acquisitae (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome), tuberositas pterygoidea (pterygoid tuberosity), anaemia myelogenā (myelogenous anemia), arteria circumflexa humeri anterior (anterior circumflex humeral artery), organum vasculosum laminae terminalis (vascular organ of lamina terminalis), fissura longitudinalis cerebri (longitudinal cerebral fissure), fasciculus uncinatus cerebelli (uncinate fasciculus of cerebellum), kyphosis thoracica (thoracic kyphosis), linea glutea inferior (inferior gluteal line), syndesmoses cranii (cranial syndesmoses), articulatio sacrococcygea (sacro-coccygeal joint), segmentum anterius mediale (anterior medial segment), infundibulum vesicae felleae (infundibulum of gallbladder), musculi palati molles et faucium (muscles of soft palate and fauces), papilla duodeni major (major duodenal papilla), ostium atrioventriculare sinistrum (left atrioventricular orifice), membrana bronchopericardiaca (bronchopericardial membrane), arteria pharyngea ascendens (ascending pharyngeal artery), tuberositas deltoidea (deltoid tuberosity)

## Part II ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

### Lesson 2

#### THE STRUCTURE OF LATIN ANATOMICAL TERMS. NOUNS AND THEIR GRAMMAR CATEGORIES

##### § 17. The Latin terminology in Anatomy and its structure

Anatomical terminology naming all parts of the human body is the base of medical terminology. For more than a century the so-called Terminologia Anatomica — The International Anatomical Terminology in Latin which is accepted by anatomists of the world, has existed. Latin is also the base for creating equivalent terms in other languages. The last edition of this International Anatomic Terminology appeared in 1998 and it contains 7428 terms.

The anatomical term is a word or several words used to denote a definite unit or structure of the human body. So Latin anatomical terms may consist of one, two, three, four and more words — up to 8.

**One-word terms** consist of one noun in singular or plural:

cor (heart), fauces (fauces)

**Two-word terms** may consist of:

1. A noun with an adjective in singular or plural:

crista renālis (renal crest); nodi faciāles (facial nodes)

2. Two nouns in singular or plural:

corpus vertēbrae (body of vertebra); terminatiōnes nervōrum (nerve terminals)

**Three-word terms** may consist of:

1. Three nouns:

ala cristae galli (ala of crista galli); lamīna arcus vertēbrae (lamina of vertebral arch)

2. One noun plus two adjectives:

glandūlae salivariae minōres (minor salivary glands); plexus cervicālis posterior (posterior cervical plexus)

3. Two nouns plus one adjective:

arcus anterior atlantis (anterior arch of atlas); tuberositas ossis sacri (sacral tuberosity)

**In multiword terms** several nouns and adjectives can be presented:

fissūra horizontālis pulmōnis dextri (horizontal fissure of right lung);  
processus uncinātus vertēbrae thoracīcae primae (uncinate process of first thoracic vertebra)

## § 18. Grammar categories of noun

The grammar categories in Latin noun are the following:

1. Gender. 2. Number. 3. Case. 4. Declension.

There are three genders in Latin: masculine (masculīnum **m**); feminine (feminīnum **f**); neutral (neutrum **n**).

English nouns, in contrast to Latin, have only a natural gender: nouns denoting males are masculine (boy, man), nouns denoting females are feminine (girl, women) and nouns denoting inanimate are of neutral gender (bone, vessel).

Latin nouns always have only grammar gender, which is determined by the ending, but what is more significant, by gender signs too (m, f, n). These gender signs are given in the dictionaries, where nouns are presented in the so-called word or dictionary form, which we shall discuss later.

As to the number, both English and Latin have two numbers — singular (singulāris) and plural (plurālis). Just like in English, the number of the noun in Latin shows whether we speak about one thing or more than one. Plural indications in English are very simple (endings -s or -es). In Latin, these indications are more numerous and are determined by the gender and declension. Plural endings will be discussed in detail in a special section.

Case as a grammar category is not presented in every language. It is absent, for example, in French, Italian and Spanish. As to English, we can speak about a “common case” and a “possessive case”. In contrast to English there are six different forms of noun endings corresponding to each case. Only four case forms of Latin nouns are used in medical terms:

Nominatīvus, Nominative (answers the questions *who, what*)

Genetīvus, Genitive (answers the questions *whose, of what*)

Accusatīvus, Accusative (answers the questions *whom, what*)

Ablatīvus, Ablative (answers the questions *by whom, with what*).

The first two cases (Nominative and Genitive) are mainly used in the medical terminology, the other cases occur more rarely, they are used in anatomical and pharmaceutical terms in combination with prepositions.

## § 19. Dictionary form of nouns

It is of vital importance to always remember, that each Latin noun must be learnt in its “Dictionary form”. This form consists of three components:

1. The full form of the Nominative singular.
2. The Genitive singular ending, indicating the type of declension.
3. Definition of the grammar gender (with the letters m, f, n):

Written form	Oral form	English equivalent of the noun
ala, ae f	ala, alae, feminīnum	wing
ligamentum, i n	ligamentum, ligamenti, neutrum	ligament
nervus, i m	nervus, nervi, masculīnum	nerve

Written form	Oral form	English equivalent of the noun
cancer, cri m	cancer, cancri, masculīnum	cancer
Eucalyptus, i f	Eucalyptus, eucalypti, feminīnum	eucalyptus
cornu, us n	cornu, cornus, neutrum	horn
corpus, ōris n	corpus, corpōris, neutrum	body

### § 20. The stem of the noun and the way to determine it

The stem of the noun is essential for declining and word building. It is determined by removing the Genitive ending which indicates the type of the declension:

Dictionary form	Full form of the Genitive	Stem of noun
crista, ae f (rib)	crist-ae	crist-
sulcus, i m (furrow, groove, sulcus)	sulc-i	sulc-
cancer, cri m (cancer)	cancr-i	cancr-
forāmen, ĩnis n (opening)	foramĭn-is	foramĭn-
arcus, us m (arch)	arc-us	arc-
facies, ěi f (face, surface)	faci-ěi	faci-

### § 21. Description of declensions

Nouns with the ending **-ae** in the Genitive singular belong **to the 1<sup>th</sup> declension**; they are mainly feminine:

ala, ae f — wing

crista, ae f — crest

vertĕbra, ae f — vertebra

Nouns having the ending **-i** in the Genitive singular belong **to the 2<sup>nd</sup> declension**.

Nouns of the **masculine gender** can have the ending **-us** in the Nominative (the greatest part) or **-er** (very limited in number):

angŭlus, i m — angle

muscŭlus, i m — muscle

nervus, i m — nerve

cancer, cri m — cancer (the full form of Genitive — **cancri**)

Nouns of the **neutral gender** have also two types: nouns with the ending form **-um** (the main part), and nouns with the ending form **-on** (they are of Greek origin), compare:

ligamentum, i n — ligament

dorsum, i n — back

encephālon, i n — brain

colon, i n — colon, large intestine

**The 3<sup>rd</sup> declension** is the most numerous one. Here are presented the nouns of all genders and with different endings in the Nominative having the ending **-is** in the Genitive. They are commonly divided into two groups.

The first one includes nouns having equal number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive (so called parisyllaba):

basis, basis f (basis, is f) — base  
 canālis, canālis m (canalis, is m) — canal

The second and the most numerous part of the nouns have one more syllable in the Genitive compared to the Nominative (so called imparisyllaba):

apex, apīcis m (the written dictionary form apex, īcis m) — apex, top  
 tuberositas, tuberositālis f (tuberositas, ātis f) — tuberosity  
 forāmen, foramīnis n (forāmen, īnis n) — foramen, opening

If such nouns have only one syllable in the Nominative, then the complete form of the Genitive is:

dens, dentis m — tooth  
 os, ossis n — bone  
 pars, partis f — part

**The 4<sup>th</sup> declension** includes nouns of the masculine and neutral gender, having the ending **-us** in the Genitive:

processus, processus m (processus, us m) — process  
 ductus, ductus m (ductus, us m) — duct  
 cornu, cornus n (cornu, us n) — horn

**The 5<sup>th</sup> declension** includes nouns, having the ending **-ei** in the Genitive:  
 facies, faciēi f (facies, ēi f) — face, surface

**Attention! Remember the following:**

1. Feminine nouns may occur in the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 4<sup>th</sup> declensions, masculine ones in the 1<sup>th</sup>: oculista, ae m (ophthalmologist), Eucalyptus, i f (eucalypt), manus us f (hand).

2. Two groups of nouns of the Greek origin retain their particular form:

2.1. Feminine nouns with the ending **-e** in the Nominative and **-es** in the Genitive: raphe, es f (a seam on the mild tissue).

2.2. Masculine nouns with the ending **-es** in the Nominative and **-ae** in the Genitive: diabētes, ae m (diabetes).

The endings proper to each declension in the Nominative and Genitive are presented in the table below:

Declension	Gender	Ending in the Nom. sing.	Examples in the Nom. sing.	Ending in the Gen. sing.	Examples in the Gen. sing.
I	f	-a	costa	-ae	costae
II	m	-us	sulcus	-i	sulci
		-er	cancer		cancri
		-um	ligamentum		ligamenti
		-on	encephālon		encephāli
III	m	different	apex	-is	apīcis
	f	different	basis		basis
	n	different	foramen		foramīnis

Declension	Gender	Ending in the Nom. sing.	Examples in the Nom. sing.	Ending in the Gen. sing.	Examples in the Gen. sing.
IV	m	-us	processus	-us	processus
	n	-u	cornu		cornus
V	f	-es	facies	-ēi	faciēi

## § 22. Exercises

### 1. Give in written the dictionary form of the following nouns:

apex, basis, canālis, cancer, cornu, corpus, cranium, dens, encephālon, facies, ganglion, lingua, mandibūla, nasus, nervus, orgānon, os, radix, scapūla, sternum, sulcus, tuber, tubercūlum, tuberositas

### 2. Give in written the dictionary form of the following nouns and define their stem and declension:

abdomen, angle, arch, base, bone, canal, crest, duct, head, horn, ligament, lower jaw, nose, opening, region, root (radix), skin, skull, surface, tongue, tooth, upper jaw

### 3. Write down the dictionary form of nouns, translate the terms into English:

apex linguae; angūlus faciēi nasi; basis cranii; canālis radīcis dentis; corpus vertēbrae; facies tubercūli costae; incisūra mandibūlae; nervus encephāli; pars faciēi sterni; septum nasi; sulcus sinus; tuber maxillae

### 4. Give the dictionary form of each noun, translate the terms into Latin:

abdomen cavity; arch of aorta; base of mandible; body of upper jaw; canal of dental radix (radix of tooth); cancer of the skin; cavity of the nose; cervical part (part of cervix); crest of the rib head; face's bone; head of rib; nerve of the brain; nervous node of the neck; part of the process; region of skull; skin's nerve; sternal angle (angle of sternum); surface of knee; top of the horn; vertebral arch (arch of vertebra)

## § 23. Vocabulary to lesson 2

### I. Latin-English vocabulary

#### 1<sup>st</sup> declension

costa, ae f — rib  
 incisūra, ae f — incisure, slit or notch  
 lingua, ae f — tongue  
 mandibūla, ae f — lower jaw, mandible  
 maxilla, ae f — upper jaw, maxilla  
 vertēbra, ae f — vertebra

## 2<sup>nd</sup> declension

angŭlus, i m — angle  
cancer, cri m — cancer  
cranium, i n — skull  
encephălon i n — brain  
ganglion, i n — nervous node  
nasus, i m — nose  
nervus, i m — nerve  
orgănon, i n — organ  
septum, i n — septum, dividing wall  
sternum, i n — sternum, breast-bone  
sulcus, i m — sulcus, furrow or groove  
tubercŭlum, i n — tubercle, small rounded swelling

## 3<sup>rd</sup> declension

apex, ĭcis m — apex, top  
basis, is f — base  
caput, ĭtis n — head  
canălis, is m — canal  
corpus, ōris n — body  
dens, dentis m — tooth  
os, ossis n — bone  
radix, ĭcis f — radix, root  
regio, ōnis f — region  
tuber, ěris n — tuber, large rounded swelling  
tuberositas, ātis f — tuberosity

## 4<sup>th</sup> declension

cornu, us n — horn, horn-shaped process  
processus, us m — process  
sinus, us m — sinus, hollow curvature or cavity

## 5<sup>th</sup> declension

facies, ěi f — face, surface

## II. *English-Latin glossary*

abdomen — abdŏmen, ĭnis n  
aorta — aorta, ae f  
angle — angŭlus, i m  
apex, top — apex, ĭcis m  
arch — arcus, us m  
base — basis, is f

horn — cornu, us n  
knee — genu, us n  
ligament — ligamentum, i n  
lower jaw, mandible — mandibŭla, ae f  
neck — cervix, ĭcis f  
nerve — nervus, i m

body — corpus, ōris n	nose — nasus, i m
bone — os, ossis n	opening — forāmen, ĩnis n
brain — cerebrum, i n	part — pars, partis f
canal — canālis, is m	process — processus, us m
cancer — cancer, cri m	region — regio, ōnis f
cavity — cavĭtas, ātis f	rib — costa, ae f
cervical: see neck	root, radix — radix, ĩcis f
costal: see rib	skin — cutis, is f
cranial: see skull	skull — cranium, i n
crest — crista, ae f	surface — facies, ěi f
dental: see tooth	top — apex, ĩcis m
duct — ductus, us m	tongue — lingua, ae f
ganglion, nervous node — ganglion, i n	tooth — dens, dentis m
face — facies, ěi f	upper jaw, maxilla — maxilla, ae f
head — caput, ĩtis n	vertebra — vertĕbra, ae f
	vertebral: see vertebra

### Lesson 3

## ADJECTIVES AND THEIR DICTIONARY FORM. ADJECTIVE AND NOUN AGREEMENT

### § 24. Introductory information about adjectives in Latin

Both in English and Latin the Adjective is a word expressing the quality of a thing: long, short, nasal, simple and so on.

But in contrast to English, Latin adjectives have always grammar coordination with their nouns, that is a noun and an adjective must have the same gender, case and number. The adjective follows the noun.

According to their endings all Latin adjectives are divided into two groups.

### § 25. 1<sup>st</sup> group of adjectives

Adjectives which have three gender endings make up the 1<sup>st</sup> group: Masculine forms have the ending **-us** or **-er**, Feminine — **-a**, Neutral — **-um**:

Masculine	Feminine	Neutral
longus (long)	longa	longum
liber (free)	libĕra	libĕrum
dexter (right)	dextra	dextrum

The dictionary form of adjectives includes the full masculine form, endings of the feminine and the neutral ones (when answering, every gender form is pronounced!). All these forms are in the Nominative:

longus, a, um — long

oral form: longus, longa, longum

liber, ěra, ěrum — free  
 dexter, tra, trum — right

oral form: liber, liběra, liběrum  
 oral form: dexter, dextra, dextrum

In the last two adjectives the endings of the feminine and the neutral forms are enlarged. It is common for the adjectives with the ending -er in the masculine form, because it helps us determine, whether the vowel -e in the feminine and the neutral forms is lost or not.

The gender forms of the adjectives of this group have the declension pattern in the nouns of the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> declensions: feminine forms are declined like the nouns of the first declension, masculine and neutral forms — like the nouns of the second declension. The stem of these adjectives is determined like that of the nouns:

Gender form	Nominative	Genitive	Declension	Stem
masculine	longus	longi	second	long-
feminine	longa	longae	first	long-
neutral	longum	longi	second	long-
masculine	liber	liběri	second	liber-
feminine	liběra	liběrae	first	liber-
neutral	liběrum	liběri	second	liber-
masculine	dexter	dextri	second	dextr-
feminine	dextra	dextrae	first	dextr-
neutral	dextrum	dextri	second	dextr-

As to the adjectives with the masculine form -er, it is more convenient to determine their stem from the feminine Genitive form.

### § 26. 2<sup>nd</sup> group of adjectives

This group includes adjectives, following the rules of the third declension of nouns. According to their gender endings they are divided into three subgroups. The stem of this group of adjectives is determined like in the preceding group.

**The first subgroup** is made up of adjectives having three gender endings: **-er** for masculine, **-is** for feminine, **-e** for neutral:

Masculine form	Feminine form	Neutral form	Genitive form	Stem
acer (sharp, acute)	acris	acre	acris	acr-
celer (quick, fast)	celěris	celěre	celěris	celer-

The written dictionary form, as in the previous group, includes the full masculine form and the endings of the feminine and the neutral:

acer, crī, cre  
 celer, ěrī, ěre

When answering orally, every gender form is pronounced in full.

**The second subgroup** includes adjectives with two gender endings. Masculine and feminine forms have the common ending **-is**, neutral — the ending **-e**:

<b>Masculine and Feminine form</b>	<b>Neutral form</b>	<b>Genitive form</b>	<b>Stem</b>
brevis (brief, short)	breve	brevis	brev-
frontālis (frontal)	frontāle	frontālis	frontal-
sacrālis (sacral)	sacrāle	sacrālis	sacral-

Adjectives of this subgroup are the most numerous in every branch of medical terminology.

The dictionary form of these adjectives consists of the full masculine/feminine forms and the ending of neutral:

brevis, e;

frontalis, e;

sacralis, e

**The third subgroup** is made up of adjectives with one ending, common for the three genders. There are four kinds of such common endings:

1) **-ns**: prominens (masculine, feminine, neutral) — prominent

2) **-s**: teres (masculine, feminine, neutral) — round

3) **-r**: par (masculine, feminine, neutral) — equal, pair

4) **-x**: simplex (masculine, feminine, neutral) — simple

Let's look at these adjectives from the point of view of their Genitive form and their stem:

<b>Gender form</b>	<b>Nominative form</b>	<b>Genitive form</b>	<b>Stem</b>
masculine feminine neutral	prominens prominens prominens	prominentis	prominent-
masculine feminine neutral	teres teres teres	terētis	teret-
masculine feminine neutral	par par par	paris	par-
masculine feminine neutral	simplex simplex simplex	simplicis	simplic-

The dictionary form of these adjectives includes the Nominative form and the Genitive ending:

sapiens, entis (oral form sapiens, sapientis)

teres, ētis (oral form teres, terētis)

par, is (oral form par, paris)

simplex, ĩcis (oral form simplex, simplicis)

## § 27. Adjective and Noun Agreement

To agree an adjective and a noun in Latin means to say or to write these parts of speech in the same gender, number and case. To do it you should:

- 1) imagine or write dictionary forms of the noun and adjective;
- 2) correctly determine the gender, number and case of the noun;
- 3) place the noun in the first place of the term;
- 4) choose the correct grammar form of the adjective for this noun and put it in the second place (after the noun).

Let us take, e. g., the following word combinations: 1) sacral vertebra; 2) carotid tubercle; 3) palatine groove

First of all, let us write down the dictionary form of every word:

sacral — *sacrālis*, e; carotid — *carotīcus*, a, um; tubercle — *tubercŭlum*, i n; palatine — *palatīnus*, a, um; groove — *sulcus*, i m; vertebra — *vertēbra*, ae f

Now, let us make up the procedure of agreement:

- 1) *vertēbra*: gender — feminine, number — singular, case — Nominative.

So in the dictionary form of adjective we choose the form *sacralis* and agree it in this way with the noun *vertebra*: *vertebra sacralis*

- 2) *tubercŭlum*: gender — neutral, singular, Nominative.

That's why we choose the adjective form *caroticum* and make up the term *tuberculum caroticum*.

- 3) *sulcus*: masculine, singular, Nominative.

So for this noun we need the adjective form *palatīnus*. Writing down it after the noun *sulcus* we get as a result the term *sulcus palatīnus*.

If we have to agree two adjectives with one noun, the order of agreement is the following. The adjective indicating the main space location of the object (*cardiācus*, a, um cardiac; *cervicālis*, e cervical, *gastrīcus*, a, um gastric and so on) is placed after the noun: right gastric artery — *arteria gastrica dextra*, deep lymph vessel — *vas lymphaticum profundum*.

One should be able not only to agree adjectives and nouns in the Nominative, but also make up the Genitive form from this Nominative construction. So, let's make the Genitive forms of the above mentioned Nominative forms:

- 1) *vertēbra sacralis*: from the dictionary form we already know the Genitive form and write it down: *vertebrae*. Now, we have to determine the Genitive form of *sacralis*. As we have seen above, this adjective belongs to the third declension, that's why the Genitive form should have the ending -is, that is *sacralis*, which finally makes in the Genitive the word combination *vertebrae sacralis*.

- 2) *tubercŭlum caroticum*: both the noun and the adjective belong to the second declension, that's why they have to receive the ending -i in the Genitive form — *tuberculi carotici*.

3) *sulcus palatīnus*: *sulcus*, as it is evident from the dictionary form, belongs to the second declension, the ending *-us* in the adjective *palatinus* tells us that this form belongs to the second declension and so we can determine the Genitive form as *palatīni*. The whole term in Genitive form is *sulci palatini*.

### § 28. The comparative degree

To form the comparative degree, it is necessary to find the stem of the positive degree and add the suffix **-ior** for the masculine and feminine forms and **-ius** for the neutral form:

Positive form	Stem	Comparative masculine and feminine form	Comparative neutral form	Translation
longus, a, um (long) simplex, ĩcis (simple)	long- simplic-	longior simplicior	longius simplicius	longer more simple

The full dictionary form of the masculine and the feminine has the ending *-ior*, while the neutral form has *-ius*:

longior, ius (written dictionary form)

longior, longius (oral form)

simplicior, ius (written dictionary form)

simplicior, simplicius (oral form)

Adjectives in the comparative degree have the same pattern of declension as nouns of the third declension. Their distinctive feature is the ending **-ōris** in the Genitive:

Nominative form of Comparative	Genitive form of Comparative	Stem
longior (m, f) longius (n)	longiōris	longior-
simplicior simplicius	simpliciōris	simplicior-

The grammar agreement of the Comparative form with nouns follows the common rules:

Positive degree		Comparative degree	
m processus	m longus	m processus	m longior
n ligamentum	n longum	n ligamentum	n longius
f radix	f longa	f radix	f longior
n ganglion	n simplex	n ganglion	n simplicius

## § 29. Comparative forms in Anatomical Terminology

In anatomical (and histological) terminology only limited forms of adjectives in the Comparative degree are used. First of all, comparative forms of the adjectives great (large) and little (small) are used:

Positive degree of Latin adjective	English equivalents	Comparative form of Latin adjectives	English anatomical equivalents
magnus, a, um	great, large	maior (major) maius (majus)	greater, larger, major
parvus, a, um	little, small	minor, minus	lesser, smaller, minor

In the forms minor, minus we don't see the full endings -ior, -ius, but that is a distinctive feature of these forms to remember.

In anatomical terminology four adjectives in the comparative form are also used, although from the point of view of English, not every of such forms express comparison:

Latin masculine and feminine form	Latin neural form	Latin dictionary form	English anatomical equivalent
anterior	anterior	anterior, ius	anterior
posterior	posterior	posterior, ius	posterior
superior	superior	superior, ius	upper, superior
inferior	inferior	inferior, ius	lower, inferior

Thus, only 6 adjectives in the form of comparative degree are used in Latin anatomical terminology:

Latin dictionary form	Genitive form	Stem
anterior, ius	anterioris	anterior-
posterior, ius	posterioris	posterior-
superior, ius	superioris	superior-
inferior, ius	inferioris	inferior-
major, ius	majoris	major-
minor, us	minoris	minor-

We should note that the stem of the adjectives in the comparative degree coincides with the Nominative masculine and feminine forms ending with -ior.

The Genitive singular form in the comparative degree is formed by adding the ending **-is** to the stem.

It is necessary to remember, that Latin adjectives in the comparative degree are always placed last in the multiword term:

facies articularis superior — superior articular surface

musculus obliquus capitis inferior — inferior oblique muscle of head

### § 30. The superlative degree

Commonly, the superlative degree is formed by adding the suffix **-issim-** and gender endings **-us, -a, -um** to the stem of the positive degree:

Positive degree	Stem	Superlative degree	English equivalent
latus, a, um (broad, vast, wide)	lat-	latissimus, a, um	the broadest (vastest, widest), latissimus (in Anatomy)
longus, a, um (long)	long-	longissimus, a, um	the longest
subtilis, e (fine)	subtil-	subtilissimus, a, um	the finest

Some forms of superlative degree are formed by special way:

Initial form	Superlative degree	English anatomical equivalent
magnus, a, um (great)	maximus, a, um	the greatest, maximus
parvus, a, um (little, small)	minimus, a, um	the least, minimus

The dictionary form of adjectives in the superlative degree is similar to adjectives of the first group with the endings **-us, -a, -um**. They are declined also like the adjectives of the first group and their stem is determined similarly.

### § 31. Peculiarities of the use of the comparison degrees of the adjectives **magnus, a, um** and **parvus, a, um** in Latin anatomical terminology

Now some notes about the use of Latin degree comparison forms that you should remember.

1. Forms **magnus / parvus** are used, if a solitary anatomical structure is indicated:

forāmen (occipitāle) magnum — foramen (occipital) magnum

arteria pancreatīca magna — greater pancreatic artery

vena magna cerēbri — great cerebral vein

nervus aureculāris magnus — great auricular nerve

muscūlus adductor magnus — adductor magnus muscle

nucleus magnus — large nucleus

2. Forms **major / minor** are used, if dimensions of two similar and placed next to each other anatomical structures are compared:

ala major / ala minor — greater wing / lesser wing

pelvis major / pelvis minor — greater pelvis / lesser pelvis

nervus petrōsus major / nervus petrosus minor — greater petrosal nerve / lesser petrosal nerve

muscūlus pectorālis major / muscūlus pectorālis minor — pectoral major muscle / pectoral minor muscle

musculus teres major / musculus teres minor — teres major muscle / teres minor muscle

## § 32. Exercises

### 1. Give orally the dictionary form of the following adjectives:

articulāris, compositum, dextrum, frontālis, impar, interna, libĕrum, nasāle, palatīna, sapiens, simplex, teres, thoracĭcum, minor, anterius, minus, superior

### 2. Correspond the following adjectives with the nouns:

articulatio, ōnis f (compositus, a, um; sinister, tra, trum; simplex, ĭcis);

caput, ĭtis n (minor, us; longus, a, um; brevis, e)

cornu, us n (occipitālis, e; hyoideus, a, um; superior, ius)

facies, ēi f (costālis, e; posterior, ius; dexter, tra, trum)

ganglion, i n (impar, āris; sublinguālis, e; superior, ius);

ligamentum, i n (teres, ĕtis; brevis, e; minor, us);

margo, ĭnis m (dexter, tra, trum; liber, ĕra, ĕrum; nasālis, e);

musculus, i m (teres, ĕtis; major, jus; latissĭmus, a, um);

nervus, i m (hypoglossus, a, um; occipitālis, e);

processus, us m (articularis, e; palatīnus, a, um; brevis, e)

### 3. Make up grammatical agreement of the adjectives with the nouns in

#### Latin:

arch (dental, venous, left); artery (deep, lingual, right); bone (short, palatine, hyoid); canal (long, short, sacral); crest (lacrimal, external); duct (hepatic, sublingual); head (upper, lower); joint (complex, simple); process (palatine, costal); region (cervical, mastoid); tubercle (carotid, lateral); vein (deep, sacral); vertebra (prominent, thoracic); vessel (left, lymphatic)

### 4. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the following terms into Latin in Nominative and Genitive cases:

articular surface; costal arch; deep lymphatic vessel; frontal crest; lateral vein; anterior ethmoidal opening; left hepatic duct; long ligament; medial root; labial artery; occipital angle; oval opening; palatine process; superficial vein; vertebral column; lesser wing; lower lip; greater petrosal nerve; teres minor muscle

### 5. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:

arcus anterior atlantis; concha nasālis suprĕma; crista tuberculi majoris; facies anterior partis petrōsae; fossa cranii anterior; labium faciēi inferius; muscŭlus longissĭmus capĭtis; musculus palpebrae superiōris; pars libĕra membri superiōris; sulcus sinus petrōsi inferiōris;

## § 33. Vocabulary to lesson 3

### I. Latin-English vocabulary

#### 1<sup>st</sup> declension

arteria, ae f — artery

concha, ae f — concha, shell

fossa, ae f — fossa, little hole  
palpebra, ae f — eyelid

2<sup>nd</sup> declension

labium, i n — lip  
ligamentum, i n — ligament  
membrum, i n — limb  
muscūlus, i m — muscle

3<sup>rd</sup> declension

articulatio, ōnis f — joint  
atlas, antis m — atlas (the first cervical vertebra)  
margo, ĩnis m — margin, border  
pars, partis f — part

4<sup>th</sup> declension

arcus, us m — arch

1<sup>st</sup> group of adjectives including forms of the superlative degree

compositus, a, um — complex  
dexter, tra, trum — right  
hyoideus, a, um — hyoid, sublingual (bone)  
hypoglossus, a, um — hypoglossal, sublingual (nerve)  
latissĭmus, a, um — latissimus (muscle), the broadest  
liber, ěra, ěrum — free  
longus, a, um — long  
magnus, a, um — large (vein), magnus (m. adductor), great (nerve)  
mastoideus, a, um — mastoid  
palatĭnus, a, um — palatine  
petrōsus, a, um — petrosal  
sacer, cra, crum — sacral (bone)  
sinister, tra, trum — left  
suprēmus, a, um — supreme

Adjectives in the form of comparative degree

anterior, ius — anterior  
inferior, ius — inferior, lower  
major, ius — major, greater  
minor, minus — minor, lesser  
posterior, ius — posterior  
superior, ius — superior, upper

## 2<sup>nd</sup> group of adjectives

alāris, e — alar  
articulāris, e — articular  
brevis, e — short  
communīcans, ntis — communicating  
costālis, e — costal  
frontālis, e — frontal  
impar, āris — impar, unpaired  
nasālis, e — nasal  
occipitālis, e — occipital  
sacrālis, e — sacral  
simplex, ĩcis — simple  
sublinguālis, e — sublingual (excepting nerve and bone)  
teres, ětis — round (excepting foramen)

### II. *English-Latin glossary*

arch — arcus, us m	lymphatic — lymphaticus, a, um
artery — arteria, ae f	mastoid — mastoideus, a, um
articular — articulāris, e	medial — mediālis, e
back — dorsum, i n	occipital — occipitālis, e
carotid — carotīcus, a, um	oval — ovālis, e
cervical — cervicālis, e	palatine — palatīnus, a, um
column — columna, ae f	petrosal — petrōsus, a, um
complex — composītus, a, um	prominent — promīnens, entis
costal — costālis, e	pterygoid — pterygoideus, a, um
crest — crista, ae f	right — dexter, tra, trum
deep — profundus, a, um	sacrālis, e (except os) — sacral
dental — dentālis, e	short — brevis, e
dorsi (= of the back) — dorsum, i n	simple — simplex, ĩcis
external — externus, a, um	sublingual — sublingualis, e (except for os and nervus)
hepatic — hepaticus, a, um	superficial — superficiālis, e
hyoid — hyoideus, a, um (os)	superior — superior, ius
joint — articulatio, ōnis f	upper — superior, ius
lacrimal — lacrimālis, e	vein — vena, ae f
lateral — laterālis, e	venous — venōsus, a, um
lower — inferior, ius	vertebral — vertebrālis, e
left — sinister, tra, trum	vessel — vas, vasis n
lesser — minor, us	wing — ala, ae f
lingual — linguālis, e	
long — longus, a, um	

## Lesson 4

### NOMINATIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

#### § 34. Nominative Plural Endings of Nouns and Adjectives

The Nominative Plural forms for both Nouns and Adjectives are formed by adding the Nominative Plural endings to their stem. These endings, particularly in the 2<sup>nd</sup>, 3<sup>rd</sup> and 4<sup>th</sup> declensions, depend on the gender and declension of Nouns and Adjectives, as shown in this table:

Declension	Gender	Nominative Singular	Stem	Nominative Plural endings	Nominative Plural Form
I	f	vertebra thoracica	vertebr- thoracic-	<b>-ae</b>	vertebrae thoracicae
II	m	sulcus dexter	sulc- dextr-	<b>-i</b>	sulci dextri
	n	septum latum ganglion oticum	sept- lat- gangli- otic-	<b>-a</b>	septa lata ganglia otica
III	m	homo sapiens	homin- sapien-	<b>-es</b>	homines sapientes
	f	pars communis	part- commun-	<b>es</b>	partes communes
	n	rete mirabile	ret- mirabil-	<b>-ia</b>	retia mirabilia
		foramen anterior	foramin- anterior-	<b>-a</b>	foramina anteriora
IV	m	processus	process-	<b>-us</b>	processus
	n	cornu	corn-	<b>-ua</b>	cornua
V	f	facies	faci-	<b>-es</b>	facies

As we can observe, only neutral nouns of the 3<sup>rd</sup> declension have two variants. The following rules of their ending differentiation are to be memorized.

1. Neutral nouns with the endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative Singular get the ending **-ia**:

animal (Engl. animal) — animalia (Nom. plur.)

pulvinar (Engl. pillow, anatom. pulvinar) — pulvinaria (Nom. plur.)

rete (Engl. net, network, anatom. network) — retia (Nom. plur.)

2. Neutral Adjectives of the 3<sup>rd</sup> declension except Adjectives in the comparative form get the ending **-ia**:

Dictionary form	Neutral form	Stem	Nominative Plural form
acer, cris, cre	acre	acr-	acria
celer, ěris, ěre	celěre	celěr-	celeria

Dictionary form	Neutral form	Stem	Nominative Plural form
frontālis, e	frontāle	frontāl-	frontālia
brevis, e	breve	brev-	brevia
prominens, ntis	prominens	prominent-	prominentia
impar, āris	impar	impar-	imparia
simplex, ĩcis	simplex	simplĭc-	simplĭcia

Nouns which don't belong to the first point of the shown above rule as well as Adjectives in the Comparative form get the ending **-a** in the Nominative Plural:

foramen superius (sing.) — foramĭna superiōra (plur.)

caput minus (sing.) — capĭta minōra (plur.)

### § 35. Abbreviations of Nominative Plural forms used in Anatomical Terms

A certain number of Nouns in the Anatomical terms is used in the shortened forms. You have to memorize these abbreviations:

Singular form		Plural form	
Full form	Abbreviation	Full form	Abbreviation
arteria	A.	arteriae	Aa.
bursa	B.	bursae	Bb.
forāmen	F.	foramĭna	Forr.
ganglion	Gangl.	ganglia	Gangll.
glandŭla	Gl.	glandŭlae	Gll.
ligamentum	Lig.	ligamenta	Ligg.
muscŭlus	M.	muscŭli	Mm.
nervus	N.	nervi	Nn.
nucleus	Nucl.	nuclei	Nucll.
ramus	R.	rami	Rr.
vagĭna	Vag.	vagĭnae	Vagg.
vena	V.	venae	Vv.

### § 36. Exercises

**1. Write down the dictionary form, translate each word combination into Latin and then make up the Nominative Plural:**

alveolar arch; cervical surface; coccygeal horn; deciduous tooth; greater palatine canal; impar ganglion; inferior nuchal line; jugular foramen; posterior tubercle; sphenoid process; superior nasal meatus; temporal fossa; tympanic cavity; third molar tooth or wisdom tooth; zygomatic bone

**2. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:**

Aa. ciliāres posteriōres breves; cartilagĭnes laryngis; Forr. palatĭna minōra; Gangll. pelvĭca; Gll. thyroideae accessoriae; labia oris; Ligg. collateralia;

Mm. rotatōres cervīcis; Nn. labiāles anteriōres; nomīna anatomīca; Nucll. vestibulāres; orgāna ocūli accessoria; ossa cranii; partes corpōris humāni; plicae palatīnae transversae; radīces craniāles; Rr. dorsāles linguae; regiōnes membri superiōris; Vv. temporāles profundae; dentes incisīvi

**3. Write down the dictionary form and translate into Latin:**

auditory ossicles; blood vessels of retina; borders of the nail; cavities of the body; costal notches; cranial nerves and sutures; dental alveoli; eyebrows and eyelashes; general terms; incisive canals; lesser palatine foramina; minor salivary glands; incisor and canine teeth; planes, lines and regions; true and false ribs

**§ 37. Vocabulary to lesson 9**

*I. Latin-English dictionary*

1<sup>st</sup> declension

glandūla, ae f — gland  
papilla, ae f — papilla  
plica, ae f — fold  
sutūra, ae f — suture

2<sup>nd</sup> declension

jugum, i n — yoke  
orgānum, i n — organ  
ramus, i m — branch  
rectum, i n — rectum

3<sup>rd</sup> declension

impressio, ōnis f — impression  
nomen, ĩnis n — name  
m. (muscūlus i m) — rotator muscle  
rotātor, ōris m

Adjectives of the 1<sup>st</sup> group

anatomīcus, a, um — anatomical  
digitātus, a, um — digitate  
humānus, a, um — human  
incisīvus, a, um (dens) — incīsor (tooth)  
otīcus, a, um — otic

Adjectives of the 2<sup>nd</sup> group

accessorius, a, um — accessory  
alveolāris, e — alveolar  
cerebrālis, e — cerebral

collaterālis, e — collateral  
 craniālis, e — cranial  
 dorsālis, e — dorsal  
 genitālis, e — genital  
 vestibulāris, e — vestibular

## II. English-Latin glossary

auditory — auditorius, a, um	line — linea, ae f
blood — sanguineus, a, um	mirabile — mirabīlis, e
brachial — brachiālis, e	molar (tooth) — molāris, e (dens)
branch — ramus, i m	muscular — musculāris, e
canine — canīnus, a, um	nail — unguis, is m
common — commūnis, e	notch — incisūra, ae f
cord — fascicūlus, i m	nuchal — nuchālis, e
costal — costālis, e	ossicle — ossicūlum, i n
deciduous — deciduus, a, um	permanent — permānens, ntis
eyebrow — supercilium, i n	plane — planum, i n
eyelash — cilium, i n	proper — proprius, a, um
false — spurius, a, um	retina — retīna, ae f
fibular (= peroneal) — fibulāris (= peronēus, a, um)	salivary — salivarius, a, um
fold — plica, ae f	suture — sutūra, ae f
fossa — fossa, ae f	term — termīnus, i m
general — generālis, e	third — tertius, a, um
girdle — cingūlum, i n	true — verus, a, um
impar — impar, āris	trunk — truncus, i m
incisive — incisīvus, a, um	wisdom — sapientia, ae f
jugular — jugulāris, e	zygomatic — zygomatīcus, a, um

## Lesson 5

### GENITIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

#### § 38. Genitive Plural Endings of Nouns and Adjectives

Both Nouns and Adjectives get the Genitive Plural forms by adding the Genitive Plural endings to their stem, depending mostly on Noun and adjective Declension, as one may see in the following table:

Declension	Gender	Nominative Singular	Stems	Genitive Plural endings	Genitive Plural Forms
I	f	vertēbra thoracīca	vertebr- thoracic-	-ārum	vertebrārum thoracicārum

Declension	Gender	Nominative Singular	Stems	Genitive Plural endings	Genitive Plural Forms	
II	m	sulcus	sulc-	-ōrum	sulcōrum	
	n	dexter ganglion oticum	dextr- gangl- otic-		dextrōrum gangliōrum oticōrum	
III	m	canālis	canal-	-ium	canalium	
		brevis	brev-		brevium	
	dens	dent-	dentium			
	permanentis	permanent-	permanentium			
	f	pars	part-		partium	
		laterālis	lateral-		lateralium	
	n	vertebrāle	vertebral-		vertebraliūm	
		os	oss-		ossium	
m	simplex	simplic-	simplicium			
	rete	ret-	retium			
f	articulāre	articular-	articularium			
	m	margo	margin-	-um	margīnum	
anterior		anterior-	anteriorum			
f	articulatio	articulation-	articulatiōnum			
	inferior	inferior-	inferiorum			
n	forāmen	foramin-	foramīnum			
	majus	major-	majorum			
IV	m	arcus	arc-		-uum	arcuum
	n	cornu	corn-			cornuum
V	f	facies	faci-	-ērum	faciērum	

As we can see, masculine, feminine and neutral nouns and adjectives of the third declension have two variants of the endings.

The ending **-ium** is added to the stems of:

1. Parisyllaba, i. e. the Masculine and Feminine Nouns which have equal number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive: canālis, is m *canal*; basis, is f *base*.

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral nouns, if their stem ends with two consonants: dens, dentis m *tooth*; pars, partis f *part*; os, ossis n *bone*.

3. Neutral nouns with the endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative Singular: animal, ālis n *animal*; calcar, āris n *calcar (spur)*; rete, is n *net, network*.

4. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the positive degree, see in the table above the adjectives articulāris, e *articular*; brevis, e *short*; laterālis, e *lateral*; permanens, ntis *permanent*; simplex, ĩcis *simple*.

The ending **-um** is added to the stems of:

1. All nouns which don't belong to the three first groups of the explained above rules, see, e. g., in the table the nouns margo, ĩnis m *border*; articulatio, ōnis f *joint*; forāmen, ĩnis n *opening*.

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the comparative degree, see in the table the adjectives anterior, *ius anterior*; inferior, *ius upper*; major, *ius major*, *larger*, *greater*.

Some Latin nouns are used only in the Plural and their dictionary forms are accordingly represented in the Nominative and Genitive Plural: fauces, *faucium* f fauces; species, *ērūm* (*speciērūm*) f species.

**Attention!** The noun *vas*, *vasis* n in the Singular belongs to the third Declension, but in the Plural — to the second one, compare: *nervi vasis* — nerves of a vessel, but *nervi vasōrum* — nerves of the vessels.

### § 39. Exercises

**1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and make up Nominative Singular and Genitive Plural forms of each word combination:**

anterior tubercle; costal process; floating rib; greater wing; internal base; left spur; greater opening; lesser sublingual duct; longitudinal ligament; long root; permanent tooth; posterior surface; respiratory region; right crest; sacral horn; short muscle; simple joint; venous network; vertebral canal

**2. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:**

*ligamenta ossiculōrum auditoriōrum*; *medulla ossium flava et rubra*; *muscūli arrectōres pilōrum*; *muscūli palati et faucium*; *nervi vasōrum lymphaticōrum*; *ostia venārum pulmonalium*; *plexus cavernōsi conchārum*; *processus accessorius vertebrārum lumbalium*; *situs viscērum inversus*; *vagīnae fibrōsae digitōrum manus*

**3. Give the dictionary form and translate into Latin:**

arteries of lower limbs; dividing walls of the frontal sinuses; heads of the true, false and floating ribs; muscles of auditory ossicles; muscles of soft palate and faucium; nerves and vessels of the vessels; nodules of semilunar cusps; sinuses of the *venae cavae* (*venae cavae* — Gen. Plur.!); surface of the canine teeth; tubercles of *thoracic vertebrae* (*thoracic vertebrae* — Gen. plur.!)

### § 40. Vocabulary to lesson 10

#### I. Latin-English vocabulary

Nouns of the 1<sup>st</sup> declension

*medulla*, ae f — medulla

*vagīna*, ae f — vagina, sheath

Nouns of the 2<sup>nd</sup> declension

*ossicūlum*, i n — ossicle

*ostium*, i n — opening

palātum, i n — palate

pilus, i m — hair

#### Nouns of the 3<sup>rd</sup> declension

m. arrector, oris m — arrector (muscle)

viscus, ěris n; usually Plur. viscĕra, um n — viscera, inner organs

fauces, ium f (Plur.) — fauces

#### Nouns of the 4<sup>th</sup> declension

manus, us f — hand

#### Adjectives of the 1<sup>st</sup> group

auditorius, a, um — auditory

cavernōsus, a, um — cavernous

fibrōsus, a, um — fibrous, a, um

flavus, a, um — yellow

inversus, a, um — inverse

ruber, bra, brum — red

#### Adjectives of the 2<sup>nd</sup> group

lumbālis, e — lumbal

pulmonālis, e — pulmonary

## II. *English-Latin glossary*

cusp — valvŭla, ae f

extensor (unbending muscle) — m. extensor, ōris m

floating — fluctuans, ntis

limb — membrum, i n

nodule — nodŭlus, i n

ossicle — ossicŭlum, i n

palate — palātum, i n

permanent — permānens, ntis

respiratory — respiratorius, a um

semilunar — semilunāris, e

soft — mollis, e

spur — calcar, āris n

stomach — gaster, tris f

true — verus, a, um

wall — paries, ětis m

## Lesson 6

### THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF THE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

#### § 41. Accusative singular and plural endings

The Latin case Accusative reflects the direct object by answering the questions «Whom? What?». In this function it corresponds to the Russian case called «Винительный» or in German to the case Akkusativ.

Nouns Masculine and Feminine as well as Adjectives get the Accusative forms by adding the corresponding endings to their stem, as one may see in the table below. Neutral Nouns and Adjectives have no special Accusative endings: Accusative Singular form corresponds to the form of the Nominative Singular and the Accusative Plural form — to the form of the Nominative Plural:

Declension	Gender	Nominative singular	Acc. sing ending	Accusative singular form	Acc. pl. ending	Accusative plural form
I	f	vena cava	<b>-am</b>	venam cavam	<b>-as</b>	venas cavas
II	m	ramus dexter sulcus palatīnus	<b>-um</b>	ramum dextrum sulcum palatīnum	<b>-os</b>	ramos dextros sulcos palatīnos
	n	ganglion otīcum septum longum	= <b>Nom. sing.</b>	ganglion otīcum septum longum	= <b>Nom. pl. (-a)</b>	ganglia otīca septa longa
III	m	margo anterior canālis nutriens	<b>-em</b>	margīnem anteriōrem; canālem nutrientem	<b>-es</b>	margīnes anteriōres; canāles nutrientes
	f	pars laterālis basis simplex pelvis major	<b>-em (-im)</b>	partem laterālem basim simplīcem pelvim majōrem	<b>-es</b>	partes laterāles bases simplīces pelves majōres
		rete capillāre crus posterius	= <b>Nom. sing.</b>	rete capillāre crus posterius	= <b>Nom. pl. (-a, -ia)</b>	retia capillaria crura posteriōra
IV	<b>m</b>	processus	<b>-um</b>	processum	<b>-us</b>	processus
	<b>n</b>	cornu	= <b>Nom. sing.</b>	cornu	= <b>Nom. pl. (-ua)</b>	cornua
V	<b>f</b>	facies	<b>-em</b>	faciem	<b>-es</b>	facies

Some ending variants are seen in the third declension. Nouns in the Accusative singular can get endings **-im** or **-em**. The ending **-im** should have:

1. Nouns with the ending **-sis** in the Nominative singular:

basis, is f (*base*) — basim

dosis, is f (*dose*) — dosim

2. Nouns *pelvis*, is f (*pelvis*) — *pelvim*; *febris*, is f (*fever*) — *febrim*; *tussis*, is f (*cough*) — *tussim*

There are two ending variants in the Genitive plural, too. The ending *-ium* get:

1. Nouns Parisyllaba of Masculine and Feminine gender:

*basis*, *sis* f — *basium*

*canālis*, *is* m — *canalium*

2. Nouns of the Neutral gender with endings *-al*, *-ar*, *-e* in Nominative singular:

*anīmal*, *ālis* n (*animal*) — *animalium*

*calcar*, *āris* n (*spur*) — *calcarium*

*rete*, *is* n (*net, network*) — *retium*

3. Nouns of Masculine, Feminine and Neutral gender the stem of which ends with two consonants:

*dens*, *dentis* m (*tooth*) — *dentium*

*pars*, *partis* f (*part*) — *partiumos*

*os*, *ossis* n (*bone*) — *ossium*

4. Adjectives of the third declension of the all gender form being in the positive form:

*brevis*, *e* (*short*) — *brevium*

*permānens*, *ntis* (*permanent*) — *permanentium*

*simplex*, *īcis* (*simple*) — *simplicium*

Nouns not belonging to the first three points as well as Adjectives in the Comparative form get the ending **-um**:

*pes*, *pedis* m (*leg*) — *pedum*

*articulatio*, *ōnis* f (*joint*) — *articulatiōnum*

*forāmen*, *īnis* n (*opening*) — *foramīnum anterior*, *ius* (*anterior*) *anteriōrum*

## § 42. Prepositions used with the Accusative

Preposition	Meaning	Examples	Translation
ad	1) to, toward 2) for 3) during, in	ad nervum trigemīnum ad usum externum ad morbum hypertoniĉum	to the trigeminal nerve for the external use in the hypertonic disease
ante	before, in front of	ante operatiōnem ante pulmōnem dextrum	before the operation in front of the right lung
circum	(a)round	circum liēnem	around the spleen
contra	for	contra febrim	for the fever
in	in, into, on (to the question «where to?»), Russian «куда?»)	in oesophāgum in partem dextram in canālem longum	into the oesophagus on the right part in the long canal

<b>Preposition</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>Examples</b>	<b>Translation</b>
infra	below, under	infra cor	below (under) the heart
inter	among, between	inter vasa manus inter duo ossa	among the vessels of the hand between two bones
intra	inside	intra thorācem	inside the thorax
per	1) through, via 2) by (means of)	per canālem opticum per ligamenta	through (via) the optic canal by (means of) the ligaments
post	after, behind	post operationem post costam	after the operation behind the rib
sub	under (at the question «where to?», Russian «куда?»)	sub scapūlam dextram  sub ganglion submandibulāre	under the right shoulder blade under the submandibular ganglion
super, supra	above	super (supra) margīnem sinistrum supra (super) labium superius	above the left margin  above the upper lip

### § 43. Prefixes formed from the Prepositions used with the Accusative

<b>Prefix and its variants</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>Example</b>	<b>Translation</b>
ad- (ac-, af-, ap-)	addition, movement nearer	adītus, us m accessorius, a, um affērens, ntis appendix, ĩcis f	adītus, entrance accessory afferent appendix
ante-	precedence in space or time	antebrachiālis, e antenatālis, e	antebrachial antenatal
circum-	disposition around some object	circumferentia, ae f	circuference
in- (im-)	1) mowing inward 2) denial of any quality	infundubūlum, i n impressio, ōnis f impar, āris innominātus, a, um	infundubulum impression impar, unpaired, odd innominate
infra-	disposition lower some object	infraorbitālis, e	infraorbital
inter-	disposition between some objects	interdentālis, e	interdental
intra-	disposition inside some object	intraarticulāris, e	intraarticular

<b>Prefix and its variants</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>Example</b>	<b>Translation</b>
per-	preservation in space or time	permānens, ntis	permanent
post-, retro-	disposition behind something in space or time	postcentrālis, e postoperatīus, a, um retromolāris, e	postcentral postoperative retromolar
sub-	disposition under some object	submandibulāris, e	submandibular
super, supra	disposition over some object	superficiālis, e supratonsillāris, e	superficial supratonsillar

#### § 44. Exercises

**1. Give the dictionary form of each word; make up forms of the Nominative singular, Accusative singular and plural:**

anterior margin; ascending artery; external base; frontal surface; greater pelvis; hepatic duct; left lung; lesser horn; lymphatic vessel; nasal bone; right part; respiratory system; short nerve; vertebral canal

**2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into English:**

ad corōnam dentis; ante et post operationem; ante labia; circum oculus sinistrum; in canālem dentis incisivi; in radīcem longam; inter ossa; intra venam faciālem; sub gingivam; per os; per pelvim minōrem; per rectum; sub linguam;

**3. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into Latin:**

above the left eye; after death; among the incisors; before and after tooth extraction; between pulp and dentine; by means of the long canal; for cough; for internal (external) use; into the deep vein; inside the sublingual artery; on the superior surface of the tooth; round the mouth; through the upper lip; under the lingual surface; via the common carotid artery

**4. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into Latin:**

accessory cusp; postsulcal part; supratonsillar fossa; interalveolar septa; infraorbital canal; minor sublingual ducts; superficial part; retromandibular vein; cardiac impression; infrahyoid muscles; innominate substance

#### § 45. Vocabulary to lesson 11

##### I. Latin-English dictionary

##### Prepositions used with the Accusative

ad — 1) to; 2) for; 3) during

ante — before (time), in front of (space)

circum — around, round

contra — against

in (to the question “where to?”, Russian «куда?») — in, into, on  
infra — below, under  
inter — among, between (two objects)  
intra — inside  
per — through, via 2) by ( means of)  
post — after (time), behind (place)  
sub (to the question “where to?”, Russian «куда?») — under  
super, supra — above, over

#### Other words

adītus, us m — aditus  
antrum, i n — antrum, cave  
auricularis, e — auriculare  
difficīlis, e — difficult  
flavus, a, um — yellow  
medulla, ae f — medulla  
oblongātus, a, um — oblongata (medulla)

## II. *English-Latin Dictionary*

#### Prepositions

above — super, supra  
after — post  
among (more than two objects) — inter  
around — circum  
before — ante  
behind — post  
between (two objects) — inter  
by (means of) — per  
during — ad  
for — ad  
in — in (to the question “where to?”)  
in front of — ante  
inside — intra  
into — in (to the question “where to?”)  
on — in (to the question “where to?”)  
round — see around  
to — ad  
through — per  
under — infra, sub (to the question “where to?”)

#### Other words

ascending — ascendens, ntis

childebirth — partus, us m  
 cough — tussis, is f  
 death — mors, mortis f  
 leg — pes, pedis m  
 operation — operatio, ōnis f  
 postsulcal — postsulcalis, e  
 supratonsillar — supratonsillaris, e  
 use — usus, us m

## Lesson 7

### ABLATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF THE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE

#### § 46. Ablative and its formation

Ablative is the Latin case reflecting different circumstances and conditions which characterize the indirect object (mood of the action, time, place, reason and so one).

Both Nouns and Adjectives get the Ablative forms by adding the corresponding endings to their stems, as one may see in the table below:

Dec- len- tion	Gen- der	Nominative singular	Abl. sing. ending	Ablative singular form	Abl. plur. ending	Ablative plural form
I	f	vena cava	-ā	vena cava	-is	venis cavis
II	m	ramus dexter sulcus palatīnus	-o	ramo dextro sulco palatīno	-is	ramis dextris sulcis palatīnis
	n	ganglion otīcum septum longum		ganglio otīco septo longo		gangliis otīcis septis longis
III	m	margo anterior canālis nutriens	-e (i)	margīne anteriorē canāle nutrienti	-ībus	marginībus anteriorībus canalībus nutrientībus
	f	pars laterālis basis simplex		parte laterāli basi simplicī		partībus lateralībus basībus simplicībus
	n	rete capillāre crus posterius		reti capillāri crure posteriorē		retībus capillarībus crurībus posteriorībus
IV	m	processus	-u	processu	-ībus	processībus
	n	cornu	-u	cornu		cornībus
V	f	facies	-e	facie	-ēbus	faciēbus

Some ending variants are seen in the third declension. Nouns and adjectives in the Ablative singular can get endings **-e** or **-i**.

The ending **-i** is added to the stem of:

1. Neutral Nouns with endings -al, -ar, -e in the Nominative singular (we have already mentioned about these nouns in the previous lessons): *anīmal*, *ālis* n — *animāli*; *calcar*, *āris* n — *calcāri*; *rete*, *is* n — *reti*.

2. Feminine Nouns:

*pelvis*, *is* f (*pelvis*) — *pelvi*;

*febris*, *is* f (*fever*) — *febri*;

*tussis*, *is* f (*cough*) — *tussi*.

3. Feminine Nouns with ending **-sis**: *basis*, *is* f (*base*) — *basi*.

4. Masculine, Feminine and Neutral Adjectives in the positive degree as well as Participles: *brevis*, *e* (*short*) — *brevi*; *capillāris*, *e* (*capillary*) — *capillāri*; *simplex*, *īcis* (*simple*) — *simplīci*; *fluctuans*, *ntis* (*floating*) — *fluctuanti*.

The ending **-e** is added to the stem of:

1. All nouns which don't belong to the three first groups of the explained above rules, — see, for example, in the table the nouns *canālis*, *margo*, *pars*, *crus*.

2. Masculine, Feminine and Neutral Adjectives in the comparative degree, — see in the table the adjective *anterior*, *ius* and *posterior*, *ius*.

#### § 47. Propositions with the Ablative

Proposition	Meaning	Examples	Translation
a, ab (before a vowel)	from	a sulco rhināli ab axe optīco	from rhinal sulcus from optical axis
cum	with	cum nervo faciāli cum febri continua	with facial nerve with continued fever
de	1) about 2) from	de ossībus cranii de gingiva	about the skull bones from the gingiva (gum)
e (ex)	1) from (about the movement from within) 2) of, from (about material)	e canāle sacrāli e cavitāte abdomīnis ex fructībus Rosae e fibrīs elastīcis	from the sacral canal from the abdomen cavity of dog-rose fruits from elastic fibers
in	(to the question «where?») in, on	in cavitāte pleurāli in facie unguis	in the pleural cavity on the nail surface
pro	1) for 2) before	pro reti venōso guttae pro ocūlis pro lingua	for venous network drops for eyes before the tongue
sine	without	sine pancreāte accessorio sine dentībus serotīnis	without accessory pancreas without wisdom teeth
sub	(to the question «where?») under	sub cute capītis sub narcōsi locāli	under the skin of head under a local anesthesia

## § 48. Prefixes formed from the Prepositions used with the Ablative

Prefix and its variants	Meaning	Example	Translation
a-, ab-	moving away	(musculus) abductor, ōris m	abductor (muscle)
com-, (col-, con-, cor-)	1) movement together 2) junction	compositus, a, um collateralis, e connectivus, a, um m. constrictor, ōris m	complex collateral connective constrictor
de-	1) movement downward 2) removing	deciduus, a, um m. depressor, ōris m depulpatio, ōnis f	deciduous (tooth) depressor depulpatio
e- (ef-, ex-)	movement out	effrens, ntis (musculus) extensor, ōris m	efferent extensor (muscle)
pre-, pro-	disposition before something in space or time	premolāris, e (dens) processus, us m prominens, ntis	premolar (tooth) process prominent

## § 49. Exercises

**1. Give the dictionary form of each word, make up the forms of Ablative singular and plural:**

1) floating rib; 2) right region; 3) short nerve; 4) sacral horn; 5) inner base; 6) left canal; 7) long spur; 8) lymphatic vessel; 9) simple joint; 10) bony tissue; 11) continued fever; 12) canine tooth; 13) lesser pelvis; 14) accessory pancreas

**2. Give the dictionary form of each word; translate from Latin into the English:**

1) glandulae sine ductibus; 2) in regionibus membri superiōris; 3) sub muscūlis facialibus; 4) pro reti venōso; 5) cum febris continua; 6) sub tunica musculāri; 7) a crista capitis costae; 8) sanguis ex vena pro analysi; 9) ab angulo inferior; 10) de terminis generalibus

**3. Give the dictionary form of each word; translate from English into the Latin:**

1) from the surface of knee; 2) in the thoracic vein; 3) under a local (general) anesthesia; 4) for external use; 5) about the abdominal muscles; 6) with a wandering kidney; 7) without upper incisors; 8) for nervous system; 9) from the head to the feet

**4. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into English:**

1) dentes decidui; 2) vasa efferentia; 3) articulatio composita; 4) musculus depressor supercilii; 5) ramus comunicans cum nervo faciali; 6) nervi abducentes; 7) processus prominens

## § 50. Vocabulary to the lesson 12

### *Latin-English dictionary*

#### Prepositions with Ablative

a, ab — from  
 cum — with  
 de — about, of  
 e, ex — from, of  
 in (to the question “where?”) — in, on  
 pro — for  
 sine — without  
 sub (to the question “where?”) — under

#### Other words

abdūcens, ntis — abducent  
 connectīvus, a, um — connective  
 continuus, a, um — continued  
 faciālis, e — facial  
 generālis, e — general  
 humānus, a, um — human  
 musculāris, e — muscular  
 promīnens, entis — prominent  
 scapūla, ae f — scapula  
 structūra, ae f — structure  
 termīnus, i m — term  
 tunīca, ae f — layer, coat

### *English-Latin Dictionary*

anesthesia — aesthesia, ae f  
 continued — continuus, a, um  
 general — generālis, e  
 local — locālis, e  
 medicine — medicamentum, i n  
 tissue — textus, us m  
 wandering — migrans, ntis

## § 51. Summary table of declensions and case endings

Declension	I	II		III		IV		V
Gender	f	m	n	m f	n	m	n	f
Nom. sing.	-ā	-us -er	-um -on	different		-us	-u	-es

Declension	I	II		III		IV		V
Gen. sing.	-ae	-i		-is		-us		-ēi
Acc. sing.	-am	-um	= Nom. sing.	-em (-im)	= Nom. sing.	-um	= Nom. sing.	-em
Abl. sing.	-ā	-o		-e (-i)		-u		-e
Nom. plur.	-ae	-i	-a	-es	-a (-ia)	-us	-ua	-es
Gen. plur.	-ārum	-ōrum		-um (-ium)		-uum		-ērum
Acc. plur.	-as	-os	= Nom. plur.	-es	= Nom. plur.	-us	= Nom. plur.	-es
Abl. plur.	-is	-is		-ībus		-ībus		-ēbus

## § 52. Model (sample) of the final test in anatomical terminology

**1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into English:**

1) paries anterior gastris; 2) frenulum labii inferioris; 3) rr. dorsales linguae; 4) ligamenta ossiculōrum auditoriōrum; 5) organa oculi accessoria

**2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:**

1) deep lingual artery; 2) teres minor muscle; 3) surface of incisor tooth; 4) planes, lines and regions; 5) heads of the true, false and floating ribs

**3. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:**

1) by means of the long canal; 2) through the skin; 3) without wisdom teeth; 4) to the hard palate

To cope with this final test you have to review (revise) thoroughly every home task, because all the terms of this test have been taken from your exercises. But the most effective way to success is your thorough learning and preparation for every lesson during the time of your studies.

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

### A

**a, ab (Abl)** from  
**accessorius, a, um** accessory  
**acusticus, a, um** auditory  
**ad (Acc.)** 1) to; 2) for; 3) during  
**adhesio, ōnis f** adhesion  
**adipōsus, a, um** fat  
**aditus, us m** aditus  
**ala, ae f** wing  
**alāris, e** alar  
**alveolāris, e** alveolar  
**ampullāris, e** ampullary  
**analýsis, is f** analysis  
**anatomīcus, a, um** anatomical  
**angūlus, i m** angle  
**ante (Acc.)** 1) before (time);  
2) in front of (place)  
**antebrachium, i n** antebrachium,  
forearm  
**anterior, ius** anterior  
**antihēlix, ĭcis f; anthēlix, ĭcis f**  
antihelix (anthelix)  
**antitrāgus, i m** antitragus  
**antrum, i n** antrum, cave  
**apex, ĭcis m** apex, top  
**apparātus, us m** apparatus  
**appendix, ĭcis f** appendix  
**arachnoideus, a um** arachnoid  
**arbor, ōris f** tree  
**arbor vitae** arbor vitae  
**arcus, us m** arch  
**arteria, ae f** artery  
**arteriōsus, a um** arterial  
**articulāris, e** articular  
**articulatio, ōnis f** joint  
**atlas, ntis m** atlas (the first cervical  
vertebra)  
**auditorius, a, um** auditory  
**auricūla, ae f** auricle  
**auricularis, e** auricular

**auris, is f** ear

**axis, is m** axis

### B

**basis, is f** base

**biliāris, e (= felleus, a, um)** gall  
(+ noun)

**bipennātus, a, um** bipennate

**biventer, tra, trum** two-bellied

**brevis, e** short

**bulbus, i m (ocūli)** eyeball

### C

**cadāver, ěris n** cadaver (dead body)

**calicūlus, i m (gustatorius)** bud

**canālis, is m** canal

**cancer, cri m** cancer

**canīnus, a um (dens)** canine (tooth)

**capsūla, ae f** capsule

**caput, ĭtis n** head

**cardiācus, a, um** cardiac

**carotīcus, a, um** carotid

**cartilāgo, ĭnis f** cartilage

**cauda, ae f** tail

**cavernōsus, a, um** cavernous

**cavitas, ātis f** cavity

**celer, ěris, ěre** rapid, quick (pulse)

**cerebellum, i n** cerebellum

**cerebrālis, e** cerebral

**cervicālis, e** cervical

**cervix, ĭcis f** cervix

**ciliāris, e** ciliary

**circum (Acc.)** around, round

**circumferentiālis, e** circumferential

**circumferentia, ae f** circumference

**coccygēus, a, um** coccygeal

**coccyx, ygis m** coccyx, coccygeal  
bone

**cochleāris, e** cochlear

**collaterālis, e** collateral

**communīcans, ntis** communicative  
**compositus, a, um** complex  
**concha, ae f** concha (shell-shaped hole)  
**connectivus, a, um** connective  
**continuus, a, um** continued  
**contra (Acc.)** against, for (cough)  
**cor, cordis n** heart  
**cornu, us n** horn, horn-shaped process  
**corpus, ōris n** body  
**cortex, icis m** cortex (crust)  
**costa, ae f** rib  
**costālis, e** costal  
**craniālis, e** cranial  
**cranium, i n** skull  
**crista, ae f** crest  
**crus, cruris n** 1) shank, leg;  
 2) crus, limb (of auditory ossicle);  
 3) bundle (of myocardium)  
**cum (Abl.)** with  
**cutis, is f** skin

## D

**de (Abl.)** about, of  
**deciduus, a, um** deciduous  
**dens, dentis m** tooth  
**dens canīnus** canine tooth  
**dens deciduus** deciduous tooth  
**dens incisīvus** incisor tooth  
**dens molāris** molar tooth  
**dens permānens** permanent tooth  
**dens premolāris** premolar tooth  
**dens sapientiae** wisdom tooth  
**dentālis, e** dental  
**dexter, tra, trum** right  
**diamēter, tri f** diameter  
**diaphragma, ātis n** diaphragm  
**diencephālon, i n** diencephalon  
**difficīlis, e** difficult  
**digastrīcus, a, um** digastric  
**digitātus, a, um** digitate

**digītus, i m** finger, toe  
**distālis, e** distal  
**dorsālis, e** dorsal  
**ductus, us m** duct  
**duodēnum, i n** duodenum  
**dura mater** dura mater  
 (the outermost meninx of the brain)  
**durus, a, um** solid

## E

**e, ex (Abl.)** from, of  
**eminentia, ae f** eminence  
**encephālon i n** brain  
**endocrīnus, a, um** endocrine  
**et** and  
**epitympanīcus, a, um** epitympanic  
**externus, a, um** external  
**extracapsulāris** extracapsular

## F

**faciālis, e** facial  
**facies, ēi f** face, surface  
**fascia, ae f** fascia  
**fascia lata** fascia lata  
**fauces, ium f** fauces  
**febris, is f** fever  
**felleus, a, um (= biliaris, e)** gall  
 (+ noun)  
**femīna, ae f** woman  
**femur, ōris n** femur, thigh (bone)  
**fibra, ae f** fibre  
**fibrōsus, a, um** fibrous  
**flavus, a, um** yellow  
**forāmen, ĩnis n** opening  
**fossa, ae f** fossa (little hole)  
**frontālis, e** frontal

## G

**ganglion, i n** nervous node  
**gaster, tris f** stomach  
**gemma, ae f** bud

**generālis, e** general  
**genitālis, e** genital  
**gingīva, ae f** gingiva, gum  
**glandūla, ae f** gland  
**glomus, ěris n** a cluster of blood vessels, glomus  
**gustatorius, a, um** taste (+ noun)

## H

**hemispherium, i n** hemisphere  
**hepar, ātis n** liver  
**hepatīcus, a, um**  
**homo, ĩnis m** man  
**humānus, a, um** human  
**hyoideus, a, um** hyoid, sublingual (bone)  
**hypochondriācus, a, um**  
hypochondriac  
**hypogastrīcus, a, um** hypogastric  
**hypoglossus, a, um** hypoglossal, sublingual (nerve)

## I

**iliācus, a, um** iliac  
**impar, āris** impar, unpaired  
**impressio, ōnis f** impression  
**imus, a, um** imus (ima), the lowest  
**in (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”), Russian «куда?»** in, into, on  
**in (Abl., when answering the question “where?”), Russian «где?»** in, on  
**incertus, a, um** incerta (zona)  
**incisīvus, a, um (dens)** incisor  
**incisūra, ae f** incisure, slit or notch  
**inferior, ius** inferior  
**infra (Acc.)** below, under  
**inter (Acc.)** among, between (two objects)  
**interclaviculāris, e** interclavicular  
**intercostālis, e** intercostal

**interlobāris, e** interlobar  
**intermandibulāris, e**  
intermandibular  
**internus, a, um** internal  
**interosseus, a, um** interosseal, interosseous  
**interpedunculāris, e** interpeduncular  
**interthalamīcus, a, um** interthalamic  
**intervertebrālis, e** intervertebral  
**intra (Acc.)** inside, in  
**intraglandulāris, e** intraglandular  
**intrajugulāris, e** intrajugular  
**intraoccipitālis, e** intraoccipital  
**inversus, a, um** inverse  
**iris, ĩdis f** iris (central part of the eye)

## J

**jugum, i n** yoke

## L

**labium, i n** lip  
**lamella, ae f** lamella  
**larynx, yngis m** larynx  
**latus, a, um** broad  
**liber, ěra, ěrum** free  
**ligamentum, i n** ligament  
**lingua, ae f** tongue  
**longissīmus, a, um** the longest  
**longitudinālis, e** longitudinal  
**longus, a, um** long  
**lumbālis, e** lumbar  
**lymphatīcus, a, um** lymphatic

## M

**magnus, a, um** large (vein), magnus (m. adductor), great (nerve)  
**major, jus** major, greater, larger  
**mandibūla, ae f** lower jaw, mandible  
**manus, us f** hand  
**margo, ĩnis m** margin, border  
**massēter, ěris m** see below  
m. masseter

**mastoideus, a, um** mastoid  
**mater, tris f** mater (cerebral coat)  
**maxilla, ae f** maxilla, upper jaw  
**meātus, us m** meatus (passage)  
**medulla, ae f** medulla  
**membrum, i n** limb  
**mesencephalicus, a, um**  
 mesencephalic  
**mesencephālon, i n** mesencephalon  
**mesocōlon, i n** mesocolon  
**metacarpālis, e** metacarpal  
**metatarsus, i m** metatarsus  
**minor, us** minor, lesser, smaller  
**minīmus, a, um** the least, minimus  
**molāris, e (dens)** molar (tooth)  
**musculāris, e** muscular  
**muscūlus, i m** muscle  
**m. adductor, ōris m** adductor  
 (bringing muscle)  
**m. arrector, ōris m** arrector (muscle  
 elevating hair)  
**m. levātor, ōris m** levator (elevating  
 muscle)  
**m. massēter, ēris m** masseter  
**m. pronātor, ōris m** pronator  
 (muscle turning the forearm)  
**m. rotātor, ōris m** rotātor  
**m. sphincter, ēris m** sphincter  
 (compressing muscle)  
**m. tensor, ōris m** tensor (straining  
 muscle)

## N

**nasālis, e** nasal  
**nasus, i m** nose  
**nervus, i m** nerve  
**nucleus, i m** nucleus  
**nomen, ĩnis n** name

## O

**oblongātus, a, um** rather long  
**occipitālis, e** occipital

**ocūlus, i m** eye  
**operatio, ōnis f** operation  
**orbĭta, ae f** orbit  
**orgānon, i n** organ  
**os, oris n** mouth  
**os, ossis n** bone  
**osseus, a, um** bony  
**ossicūlum, i n** ossicle  
**ostium, i n** opening, orifice  
**otĭcus, a, um** otic

## P

**palatīnus, a, um** palatine  
**palātum, i n** palate  
**palpēbra, ae f** eyelid  
**pancreatĭcus, a, um** pancreatic  
**parapharyngeālis, e** parapharyngeal  
**paraventriculohypophysiālis, e**  
 paraventriculohypophysial  
**paravesicālis, e** paravesical  
**paries, ětis m** wall  
**parotideus, a, um** parotid  
**pars, partis f** part  
**partus, us m** childbirth, delivery  
**parvus, a, um** little, small  
**pecten, ĩnis m** pecten (crest)  
**pelvĭcus, a, um** pelvic  
**pelvis, is f** pelvis  
**per (Acc.)** 1) through, via; 2) by  
 (means of)  
**periventriculāris, e** periventricular  
**permānens, entis (dens)** permanent  
 (tooth)  
**pes, pedis m** foot  
**petrōsus, a, um** stony  
**phalanx, ngis f** phalanx  
**pĭus, a, um (mater)** pia (mater)  
**pĭlus, i m** hair  
**planta, ae f** sole  
**plexus, us m** plexus (network,  
 chiefly of veins or nerves)  
**plica, ae f** fold

**porta, ae f** porta (gate of the liver)  
**post (Acc.)** after (time), behind  
 (place)  
**posterior, ius** posterior  
**premolāris, e (dens)** premolar  
 (tooth)  
**preoccipitālis, e** preoccipital  
**pro (Abl.)** for  
**processus, us m** process  
**profundus, a, um** deep  
**proprius, a, um** proper  
**pubes, is f** pubis  
**pulmo, ōnis m** lung  
**pulmonālis, e** pulmonary  
**pulsus, us m** pulse  
**pupilla, ae f** pupil  
**pyrāmis, ĭdis f** pyramid

## Q

**quadrātus, a, um** square, quadrate  
 (muscle), quadratus (pronator)

## R

**radix, ĭcis f** radix, root  
**ramus, i m** branch  
**recessus, us m** recess  
**rectum, i n** rectum  
**regio, ōnis f** region  
**ren, renis m** kidney  
**renālis, e** renal  
**respiratorius, a, um** respiratory  
**rete, is n** 1) rete (mirabile);  
 2) network (dorsal venous of hand)  
**retromandibulāris, e**  
 retromandibular  
**retropharyngēus, a, um**  
 retropharyngeal  
**rima, ae f** fissure, opening  
**ruber, bra, brum** red

## S

**sacrālis, e** sacral  
**sanguis, ĭnis m** blood  
**saphēnus, a, um** saphenous  
**sapiens, ntis** intelligent, clever  
**sapientia, ae f** wisdom  
**scapŭla, ae f** scapula, shoulder blade  
**sectio, ōnis f** section  
**segmentum, i n** segment  
**semicirculāris, e** semicircular  
**semilunāris, e** semilunar  
**septum, i n** septum, dividing wall  
 seu or  
**simplex, ĭcis** simple  
**sine (Abl.)** without  
**sinister, tra, trum** left  
**sinus, us m** sinus, hollow curvature  
 or cavity  
**situs, us m** site  
**spatium, i n** space  
**spina, ae f** spine  
**spinālis, e** spina  
**splanchnicus, a, um** splanchnic  
**squama, ae f** squamous part, scales  
**sternum, i n** sternum, breastbone  
**structŭra, ae f** structure  
**sub (Acc., when answering**  
 the question “where to?”,  
 Russian «куда?»; **Abl., when**  
 answering the question  
 “where?”, Russian «где?») under  
**sublinguālis e** sublingual (except for  
 nerve and bone)  
**submandibulāris, e** submandibular  
**submucōsus, a, um** submucous  
**substantia, ae f** substance  
**sulcus, i m** sulcus, furrow or groove  
**super, supra (Acc.)** above, over  
**superficiālis, e** superficial  
**superior, ius** superior  
**supraorbital** supraorbitalis, e  
**suprapleurālis, e** suprapleural

**suprarenālis, e** suprarenal  
**suprēmus, a, um** supreme,  
the highest  
**sutūra, ae f** suture  
**symphŷsis, is f** symphysis  
**synchondrōsis, is f** synchondrosis  
**syndesmōsis, is f** syndesmosis  
**systema, ātis n** system

## T

**temporālis, e** temporal  
**teres, ětis** round (except for foramen)  
**terminatio, ōnis f** ending  
**termīnus, i m** term  
**textus, us m** tissue  
**thoracicus, a, um** thoracic  
**thorax, ācis m** thorax, chest  
**thyr(e)oideus, a, um** thyroid  
**tractus, us m** tract  
**tragus, i m** tragus  
**transverses, a, um** transverse  
**trigōnum, i n** trigone  
**tuber, ěris n** tuber, large rounded  
swelling  
**tubercŭlum, i n** tubercle, small  
rounded swelling  
**tuberositas, ātis f** tuberosity

**tumor, ōris m** tumor (swelling,  
growth)  
**tunīca, ae f** 1) layer, coat;  
2) membrane  
**tympanicus, a, um** tympanic

## U

**unguis, is m** nail  
**utĕrus, i m** uterus

## V

**vagīna, ae f (of muscle)** vagina,  
sheath  
**vas, vasis n** vessel  
**vena, ae f** vein  
**venōsus, a, um** venous  
**venter, tris m** belly (of the muscle)  
**vermiformis, e** vermiform  
**vertĕbra, ae f** vertebra  
**vertebrālis, e** vertebral  
**vesīca, ae f** bladder  
**vestibulāris, e** vestibular  
**vestibŭlum, i n** vestibule  
**vir, i m** man  
**viscus, ěris n; usually Plur. viscĕra,**  
**um n** viscera, inner organs  
**vita, ae f** life  
**vomer, ěris m** vomer

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

### A

**abdomen** abdōmen, ĩnis n  
**abdominal** abdominālis, e  
**about** de (Abl.)  
**above** super, supra (Acc.)  
**accessory** accessorius, a, um  
**adductor** (muscūlus) adductor,  
ōris m  
**after** post (Acc.)  
**among (more than two objects)**  
inter (Acc.)  
**anesthesia** anaesthesia, ae f  
**angle** angŭlus, i m  
**anterior** anterior, ius  
**aorta** aorta, ae f  
**apex, top** apex, ĩcis m  
**arch** arcus, us m  
**around** circum (Acc.)  
**artery** arteria, ae f  
**articular** articulāris, e  
**ascending** ascendens, ntis  
**auricular** auricularis, e  
**atlas** atlas, antis m  
**auditory** auditorius, a, um

### B

**back** dorsum, i n  
**base** basis, is f  
**before** ante (Acc.)  
**behind** post (Acc.)  
**between (two objects)** inter (Acc.)  
**blood** sanguis, ĩnis m  
**body** corpus, ōris n  
**bone** os, ossis n  
**bony** osseus, a, um  
**border** margo, ĩnis m  
**brachial** brachiālis, e  
**brain** cerēbrum, i n  
**branch** ramus, i m  
**breast** mamma, ae f

**broadest** latissĭmus, a, um  
**bronchial** bronchiālis, e  
**bursa (pouch, sac)** bursa, ae f  
**by (means of)** per (Acc.)

### C

**canal** canālis, is m  
**cancer, cri m** cancer  
**canine (tooth)** canĭnus, a, um (dens)  
**cardiac** cardiācus, a, um  
**carotid** carotĭcus, a, um  
**cartilage** cartilāgo, ĩnis f  
**cava, cauae** cavus, a, um  
**cavity** cavĭtas, ātis f  
**cell** cellŭla, ae f  
**central** centrālis, e  
**cerebellum** cerebellum, I n  
**cervical** cervicālis, e  
**cervix** cervix, ĩcis f  
**chiasm** chiasma, ātis n  
**childbirth** partus, us m  
**ciliary** ciliāris, e  
**coccygeal** coccygēus, a, um  
**colon** colon, i n  
**column** columna, ae f  
**common** commŭnis, e  
**complex** composĭtus, a, um  
**conjoint** conjunctĭvus, a, um  
**constrictor (compressing muscle)**  
muscūlus constrictor, ōris m  
**continued** continuus, a, um  
**cord** fascicŭlus, i m  
**costal** costālis, e  
**cough** tussis, is f  
**cranial** craniālis, e  
**crest** crista, ae f  
**crus** crus, cruris n  
**culmen** culmen, ĩnis n  
**curvature** curvatŭra, ae f  
**cusp** valvŭla, ae f

## D

**death** mors, mortis f  
**deep** profundus, a, um  
**dental** dentālis, e  
**depressor (lowing muscle)** musculus depressor, ōris m  
**diaphragm** diaphragma, ātis n  
**digitus, digiti** digītus, i m  
**distal** distālis, e  
**dividing** divīdens, entis  
**division** divisio, ōnis f  
**dorsal** dorsālis, e  
**duct** ductus, us m  
**during** ad (Acc.)

## E

**ear** auris, is f  
**endocrine** endocrīnus, a, um  
**epigastric** epigastrīcus, a, um  
**ethmoidal** ethmoidālis, e  
**extensor (unbending muscle)** musculus extensor, ōris m  
**external** externus, a, um  
**eyebrow** supercilium, i n  
**eyelash** cilium, i n

## F

**face** facies, ēi f  
**false** falsus, a, um  
**falx** falx, falcis f  
**fascia** fascia, ae f  
**fauces** fauces, ium f (plur.)  
**fever** febris, is f  
**fibrous** fibrōsus, a, um  
**fibular (= peroneal)** fibulāris (= peronēus, a, um)  
**fissure** fissūra, ae f  
**flexor (bending muscle)** musculus flexor, ōris m  
**floating** fluctuans, ntis  
**fold** plica, ae f  
**foot** pes, pedis m

**for** ad (Acc.), pro (Abl.)  
**forāmen, īnis n opening**  
**forearm** antebrachium, i n  
**forest** silvestris, e  
**forehead** sincīput, ītis n  
**fornix** fornix, īcis m  
**forth** quartus, a, um  
**fossa** fossa, ae f  
**free** liber, ěra, ěrum  
**from** a, ab( Abl.); e, ex (Abl)  
**frontal** frontālis, e

## G

**gallbladder** vesīca fellea (= vesīca biliāris)  
**ganglion, a cluster of nervous cells** ganglion, i n  
**gastric** gastrīcus, a, um  
**general** generālis, e  
**girdle** cingūlum, i n  
**gland** glandūla, ae f  
**gluteal** glutēus, a, um  
**great** magnus, a, um  
**greater** major, jus  
**groove** sulcus, i m

## H

**hallux** hallux, ūcis m  
**hand** manus, us f  
**head** caput, ītis n  
**heart** cor, cordis n  
**hepatic** hepatīcus, a, um  
**highest** suprēmus, a, um  
**horn** cornu, us n  
**hyoid** hyoideus, a, um

## I

**ima** imus, a, um  
**impar** impar, āris  
**in** in (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”; Abl., when answering the question “where?”)

**incisive** incisīvus, a, um  
**incisor** incisīvus, a um  
**incus** incus, ūdis f  
**index (index finger)** index, ĩcis m  
**inferior** inferior, ius  
**infrahyoid** infrahyoideus, a, um  
**infraorbital** infraorbitālis, e  
**in front of** ante (Acc.)  
**inguinal** inguinalis, e  
**inner internus, a, um**  
**innominate** innominātus, a, um  
**inside** intra (Acc.)  
**intelligent** sapiens, entis  
**interclavicular** interclaviculāris, e  
**intercostal** intercostālis, e  
**interlobar** interlobāris, e  
**intermandibular** intermandibulāris, e  
**internal** internus, a, um  
**interosseal** interosseus, a, um  
**interosseous** interosseus, a, um  
**into** in ( Acc., when answering  
the question “where to?”)  
**intraglandular** intraglandulāris, e  
**iris** iris, ĩdis f

## J

**joint** articulatio, ōnis f  
**jugular** jugulāris, e

## K

**kidney** ren, renis m  
**knee** genu, us n

## L

**lacrimal** lacrimālis, e  
**lactiferous** lactifērus, a, um  
**large** magnus, a, um  
**larynx** larynx, ngis m  
**lateral** laterālis, e  
**latissimus** latissĭmus, a um  
**left** sinister, tra, trum  
**leg** pes, pedis m

**lesser** minor, us  
**ligament** ligamentum, i n  
**limb** membrum, i n  
**line** linea, ae f  
**lingual** linguālis, e  
**lip** labium, i n  
**liver** hepar, ātis n  
**local** locālis, e  
**long** longus, a, um  
**longest** longissĭmus, a, um  
**longitudinal** longitudinālis, e  
**lower** inferior, ius  
**lower jaw, mandible** mandibŭla, ae f  
**lung** pulmo, ōnis m  
**lymphatic** lymphatĭcus, a, um

## M

**magnus, magnum** magnus, a, um  
**major** major, jus  
**man** homo, ĩnis m  
**mandible** mandibŭla, ae f  
**margin** margo, ĩnis m  
**mastoid** mastoideus, a, um  
**meatus** meātus, us m  
**medial** mediālis, e  
**medicine** medicamentum, i n  
**membrane** membrāna, ae f  
**membranous** membranaceus, a, um  
**middle** medius, a, um  
**minimus** minĭmus, a, um  
**minor** minor, us  
**mirabile** mirabĭlis, e  
**mobile** mobĭlis, e  
**molar** molāris, e  
**molar tooth** dens molaris  
**mouth** os, oris n  
**muscular** musculāris, e  
**muscle** muscŭlus, i m

## N

**nail** unguis, is m  
**nasal** nasālis, e

**neck** cervix, īcis f  
**nerve** nervus, i m  
**nerve node** ganglion, i n  
**nervous** nervōsus, a, um  
**network** rete, is n  
**node** nodus, i m  
**nodule** nodūlus, i m  
**nose** nasus, i m  
**notch** incisūra, ae f  
**nuchal** nuchālis, e  
**nucleus** nucleus, i m

## O

**occipital** occipitālis, e  
**occiput** occīput, ītis n  
**on** in (Acc. to the question “where to?”, Abl. to the question “where?”)  
**opening** forāmen, īnis n  
**operation** operatio, ōnis f  
**optic** optīcus, a, um  
**ossicle** ossicūlum, i n  
**oval** ovālis, e

## P

**palate** palātum, i n  
**palatine** palatīnus, a, um  
**palatini (veli)** palatīnus, a, um  
**pancreas** pancreas, ātis n  
**pancreatis** pancreas, ātis n  
**parapharyngeal** parapharyngeālis, e  
**paravesical** paravesicālis, e  
**parenchyma** parenchŷma, ātis n  
**parietal** parietālis, e  
**part** pars, partis f  
**pectoral** pectorālis, e  
**pelvis** pelvis, is f  
**pelvic** pelvīcus, a, um  
**permanent** permānens, ntis  
**peroneal** peronēus, a, um  
**petrosal** petrōsus, a, um  
**phalanx** phalanx, ngis f

**pharynx** pharynx, ngis m  
**plane** planum, i n  
**plant** planta, ae f  
**plexus** plexus, us m  
**pollex, pollicis (thumb)** pollex, īcis m  
**posterior** posterior, ius  
**preoccipital** preoccipitālis, e  
**process** processus, us m  
**prominent** promīnens, ntis  
**proper** proprius, a, um  
**pterygoid** pterygoideus, a, um  
**pulvinar** pulvīnar, āris n  
**pyramide** pyrāmis, īdis f

## R

**radix** radix, īcis f  
**rectum** rectum, i n  
**region** regio, ōnis f  
**renal** renālis, e  
**respiratory** respiratorius, a um  
**rete** rete, is n  
**retina** retīna, ae f  
**retromandibular** retromandibulāris, e  
**rheomboid** rhomboideus, a, um  
**rib** costa, ae f  
**right** dexter, tra, trum  
**ring-shaped (= anular)** anulāris, e  
**root, radix** radix, īcis f  
**rotator (rotating muscle)** musculus rotātor, ōris m  
**round** see around

## S

**sacral** sacrālis, e  
**salivary** salivarius, a, um  
**saphenous** saphēnus, a, um  
**segment** segmentum, i n  
**semilunar** semilunāris, e  
**septum** septum, i n  
**short** brevis, e  
**sinus** sinus, us m

**simple** simplex, ĭcis  
**skin** cutis, is f  
**skull** cranium, i n  
**small** parvus, a, um  
**smaller** minor, us  
**soft** mollis, e  
**sole** planta, ae f  
**space** spatium, i n  
**sphenoidal** sphenoidālis, e  
**splanchnic** splanchnĭcus, a, um  
**spleen** lien, ēnis m  
**spur** calcar, āris n  
**squamous** squamōsus, a, um  
**sternal** sternālis, e  
**sternum** **sternum**, i n  
**stomach** gaster, tris f  
**stony** petrōsus, a, um  
**stroma** stroma, ātis n  
**sublingual** sublinguālis, e  
**submandibular** submandibulāris, e  
**superficial** superficiālis, e  
**superior, upper** superior, ius  
**supraorbital** supraorbitālis, e  
**suprupleural** suprupleurālis, e  
**supratonsillar** supratonsillarise, e  
**surface** facies, ēi f  
**suture** sutūra, ae f  
**system** systēma, ātis n

## T

**tail** cauda, ae f  
**tegmen** tegmen, ĭnis n  
**temporal** temporālis, e  
**tendon** tendo, ĭnis m  
**tensor (straining muscle)** musculus  
     tensor, ōris m  
**term** termĭnus, i m  
**thalamus** thalāmus, i m  
**thigh** femur, ōris n  
**third** tertius, a, um  
**thoracic** thoracĭcus, a, um  
**thorax** thorax, ācis m

**through** per (Acc.)  
**thyroid** thyr(e)oideus, a, um  
**tissue** textus, us m  
**to** ad (Acc.)  
**tongue** lingua, ae f  
**tooth** dens, dentis m  
**top** apex, ĭcis m  
**transverse** transversus, a, um  
**tree** arbor, ōris f  
**trochanter** trochanter, ēris m  
**true** verus, a, um  
**trunk** truncus, i m  
**tympanic** tympanĭcus, a, um

## U

**under** infra (Acc.); sub (Acc. to  
     the question “where to?”, Abl. to  
     the question “where ?”)  
**upper** superior, ius  
**upper jaw, maxilla** maxilla, ae f  
**ureter** urēter, ēris m  
**use** usus, us m

## V

**vein** vena, ae f  
**velum (curtain)** velum, i n  
**vena (vein)** vena, ae f  
**venae** see **vena**  
**venous** venōsus, a, um  
**ventricle** vertricŭlus, i m  
**vertebra** vertēbra, ae f  
**vertebral** vertebrālis, e  
**vessel** vas, vasis n  
**vomer** vomer, ēris m

## W

**wall** paries, ētis m  
**wandering** migrans, ntis  
**wisdom** sapientia, ae f

## Z

**zygomatic** zygomatĭcus, a, um



## Part III PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

### Lesson 8 INTRODUCTION TO THE LATIN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

#### § 53. General information on the Latin pharmaceutical Terminology

The words pharmacist, pharmaceutical, pharmacy etc have in their origin the ancient Greek word *pharmacon* that is drug, medicine. Historically, the names of drugs and their component parts as well as the names of drug forms and some other pharmaceutical terms, especially in medical prescriptions, are given in Latin. Nowadays, the use of Latin in the pharmaceutical practice of every country depends on national tradition and other factors. Namely, the tradition of using Latin both in the drugs names and medical prescriptions lasts in Russia, Republic of Belarus, Ukraine and some other European countries.

To the Latin pharmaceutical terms belong:

1. Names of drugs: *AmidopyrInum* (amidopyrin), *Corvalōlum* (corvalol), *Streptocīdum* (streptocid).

2. Names of medical plants: *Belladonna* (belladonna), *Digitālis* (foxglove), *Quercus* (oak).

3. Names of chemical elements: *Kalium* (potassium), *Oxygenium* (oxygen), *Sulfur* (sulphur).

4. Adjectives: *Mentha piperIta* (pepper mint), *Species antiasthmaticae* (antiasthmatic species), *Suppositoria vaginalia* (vaginal suppositories).

5. Names of the drug forms: *Unguentum Tetracyclīni* (ointment of tetracycline), *Tabulettae Myelosāni* (tablets of myelosan), *Tinctūra Menthae* (tincture of mint).

6. Names of the parts of medical plants: *Tinctūra radīcis Valeriānae* (tincture of valerian root), *Herba Valeriānae* (herb of valerian), *Flores Chamomillae* (flowers of matricary).

7. Supplementary nouns and adjectives (mainly in medical prescriptions): *dosis* (dose), *numērus* (number), *talis* (such).

Now let us systematize the use of capital and small letters in the Latin pharmaceutical terms.

**The capital letter** is used:

1. In the names of drugs: *Codeīnum* (codeine), *Furacilīnum* (furacilin), *Validōlum* (validol).

2. In the names of medical plants: *Calendūla* (calendula), *Eucalyptus* (eucalyptus), *Frangūla* (buckhorn).

3. In the names of chemical elements: Ferrum (iron), Oxygenium (oxygen), Zincum (zinc).

**Attention!** Nouns of these three groups are written with capital letter in the dictionary form too: Codeīnum, i n; Calendūla, ae f; Ferrum, i n.

4. As the first letter of the names of the drug form, if this name is the first in the multiword term: Linimentum Streptocīdi (liniment of streptocid), Species antiasthmaticae (antiasthmatic species), Tinctūra Valeriānae (tincture of valerian).

5. As the first letter of the names of the plant component, if this name is the first in the multiword term: Herba Valeriānae (herb of valerian), Flores Chamomillae (flowers of matricary), Folia Menthae piperītae (mint pepper leaves).

**The small letter** is used:

1. In adjectives both in the structure of the term and in the dictionary form: Mentha **piperīta** (piper mint) — piperītus, a, um;

Acīdum **acetylsalicylicum** (acetylsalicylic acid) — acetylsalicylicus, a, um.

2. In the drug form names or the plant component names being not the first in the term structure as well as in the dictionary form of these names:

Acīdum acetylsalicylicum in **tabulettis** (acetylsalicylic acid in tablets — tabuletta, ae f; acetylsalicylicus, a, um.

Decoctum **corticis** Quercus (decoction of oak bark) — cortex, icis m; decoctum, i n.

3. If the drug form name or the plant component name is used without drug names:

unguenta et linimenta (ointments and liniments); solutio ad usum externum (solution for external use); pulvėres composīti (compound powders); folia et flores (leaves and flowers); radix et rhizōma (root and rhizome)

4. In constructions with a preposition indicating prescription, order of drug use or way of storage:

Solutio Furacilīni ad **usum externum** (solution of furacilin for external use); Tabulettae contra **tussim** (tablets for cough); Thea medicinālis pro **infantibus** (medicinal tea for children); Mixtio pro **inhalationibus** in **vitro nigro** (mixture for inhaling in dark phial)

Some other peculiarities of using capital or small letter in pharmaceutical terms will be further described in the subsequent parts of this textbook.

## § 54. The drug form names

Every drug is produced in a physical form most adequate for use. Traditionally, three main forms are used: solid, semisolid and liquid.

### **Solid forms**

Dragées (dragée, a French word which is used without latinization in Plural and hasn't any Latin dictionary form) — drops

Granūla (**granūlum, i n**) — granules of different form, containing drugs  
Pilūlae (**pilūla, ae f**) — pills, small balls with drug  
Pulvėres (**pulvis, ěris m**) — powders  
Species (**species, ěrum f**, only Plural form) — species, mixture of different parts of medicinal plants  
Tabulettae (**tabuletta, ae f**) — tablets  
Theae (**thea, ae f**) — teas

#### **Semisolid forms**

Emplastra (**emplastrum, i n**) — plasters  
Pastae (**pasta, ae f**) — pastes, thick ointments  
Suppositoria (**suppositorium, i n**) — suppositories  
Unguenta (**unguentum, i n**) — ointments

#### **Liquid forms**

Decocta (**decoctum, i n**) — decoctions  
Emulsa (**emulsum, i n**) — emulsions  
Extracta (**extractum, i n**) — extracts  
Guttae (**gutta, ae f**) — drops (of liquids)  
Infūsa (**infūsum, i n**) — infusions  
Linimenta (**linimentum, i n**) — liniments  
Mixtūrae (**mixtūra, ae f**) — mixtures  
Mucilagėnes (**mucilāgo, ĩnis f**) — mucilages, liquids containing mucous substances  
Olea (**oleum, i n**) — oils  
Sirūpi (**sirūpus, i m**) — syrups  
Solutiōnes (**solutio, ōnis f**) — solutions  
Tinctūrae (**tinctūra, ae f**) — tinctures

#### **Some other drug forms**

Aėrosōla (**aėrosōlum, i n**) — aerosols  
Capsūlae (**capsūla, ae f**) — capsules  
Lamellae (= Membranūlae) ophthalmīcae (**lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f**) — ophthalmic films with drug

### **§ 55. Components of medical plants**

cortex, ĩcis m — cortex, bark  
flos, floris m — flower  
folium, i n — leaf  
fructus, us m — fruit  
herba, ae f — herb  
radix, ĩcis f — root  
rhizōma, ātis n — rhizome  
semen, ĩnis n — seed

## § 56. Medicinal plants in the pharmaceutical terms

The medicinal plant names are mostly nouns of the 1<sup>th</sup> declension:

Chamovilla, ae f — matricary

Frangŭla, ae f — buckhorn

Some names are nouns of the 2<sup>th</sup> declension:

Leonŭrus, i m — motherwort

Millefolium, i n — milfoil

Less numerous are nouns of the 3<sup>th</sup> declension:

Digitālis, is f — foxglove

Adonis, ĩdis m, f — adonis

Very rarely nouns of the 4<sup>th</sup> declension are used: Quercus, us f — oak

**One should remember that names of trees are always feminine:**

Eucalyptus, i f — eucalypt

Quercus, us f — oak

Some plant names consist of a noun and an adjective:

Mentha piperĭta — pepper mint

Adonis vernālis — spring adonis

The medical plant names occur:

1. In the names of liquid drug forms: Tinctŭra Valeriānae — tincture of valerian; Decoctum corticis Quercus — decoction of oak bark.

2. In the labels of different packages containing the components of medical plants: Folia Urtĭcae — leaves of nettle; Semen Lini — seed of flax.

3. As a component of the medical prescription:

Recĭpe: Extracti Aloĕs fluĭdi 1 ml

– Take: Liquid extract of aloe 1 ml.

Recĭpe : Cortĭcis Crataegi 30, 0

– Take: Cortex of hawthorn 30,0.

As we see, the name of the plant component is always placed before the plant name.

## § 57. The morphological structure of one-word Latin drug names

The one-word drug names usually consist of a noun root, a suffix (-ĭn- is the most common, then follow suffixes -ōl- and -ĭd-), and, finally, the most common ending — um:

Codeĭnum — codein; Dibazōlum — dibazol; Saluzĭdum — saluzid

In the drug names are widely used specific Greek and Latin noun roots expressing certain pharmaceutical information. Knowledge of these morphological elements of most common usage enables to write correctly complicated drug names with a correct spelling, what is one of the main tasks of

learning the pharmaceutical part of our subject. Let you memorize the first part of these morphological elements:

Morphological root	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent
<b>-cyclin-</b>	antibiotics-tetracycline	Tetracyclīnum	tetracycline
<b>-cyclo-</b>	making an effect on the metabolic processes	Cycloserīnum	cycloserin
<b>-menth-</b>	product including mint	Menthōlum	menthol
<b>-mycīn-</b>	antibiotics-streptomycin	Monomycīnum	monomycin
<b>-myco-</b>	antimycotic, against fungi	Mycoseptīnum	mycoseptin
<b>-pyr-</b>	influence on the body temperature	Antipyrīnum	antipyrin
<b>-strept-</b>	different pharmaceutical effects	Streptocīdum	streptocid

You should memorize prefixes of Greek origin used in drug name constructing:

Prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent
<b>-a-, -an-</b> (before a vowel)	denying, removing	Apressīnum Analgīnum	apressin analgin
<b>anti-</b>	acting against	antiasthmaticus	antiasthmatic
<b>hyper-</b>	increase, elevation	Hyperōlum	hyperol
<b>hypo-</b>	decrease, lowering	Hypothiazīdum	hypothiazid

### § 58. Some rules of building multiword Pharmaceutical terms

Every multiword Latin pharmaceutical term begins, as a rule, with a drug **form** name. Then, the **drug** name follows. If the drug form has an adjective, this adjective is the last in the term:

Extractum Crataegi fluīdum — liquid extraction of hawthorn

Tabulettae Tetracyclīni obductae — coated tablets of tetracycline

Sometimes, the drug name is used without a form name, especially if prescription or way of storage is indicated:

Aether pro narcōsi — ether for narcosis

Cycloserīnum in capsūlis — cycloserin in capsules

Somatotropīnum humānum pro injectionibus — human somatotropin for injections

Thyreoidīnum in tabulettis — thyreoidin in tablets

Latin names of drugs with compound composition can be enclosed into quotation marks or inverted commas. But English equivalents of these names are used without quotation marks or inverted commas, compare:

Aërosolum “Camphomenum” — aerosol of camphomen

Suppositoria “Anaesthesolum” — suppositories of anaesthesol

You can find in the dictionaries indication with which nouns these specific signs are used.

## § 59. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:

Extractum Leonūri fluīdum; Linimentum Aloēs; Rhizōma cum radicibus Valeriānae; Sirūpus ex fructibus Rosae; Solutio «Tetrosterōnum» pro injectionibus; Suppositoria vaginalia cum Synthomycīno; Tabulettae Aspirīni obductae; Tinctūra foliōrum Eucalypti; Unguentum Dibiomycīni ophthalmicum

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:

antiasthmatic species; coated tablets of tetracycline; decoction of oak bark; tincture of pepper mint; dry extract of belladonna; ether for narcosis; herb of spring adonis; liquid extract of hawthorn; medicinal tea for children; mint pepper leaves; ointment of mycoseptin; powder of foxglove leaves; root and rhizome of valerian; simple and compound powders; tablets of antipyrin; tincture of matricary flowers

## § 60. Vocabularies to the lesson 8

### I. Latin-English dictionary

Aloë, ěs f — aloe	obductus, a, um — coated
Aspirīnum, i n — aspirin	ophthalmicus, a, um — ophthalmic
cum (Abl.) — with	radix, ĩcis f — root
Dibiomycīnum, i n — dibiomycine	rhizōma, ātis n — rhizome
ex (Abl.) — of	sirūpus, i m — syrup
Eucalyptus, i f — eucalyptus	suppositorium, i n — suppository
extractum, i n — extract	Synthomycīnum, i n — synthomycine
fluīdus, a um — liquid	tabuletta, ae f — tablet
folium, i n — leaf	tinctūra, ae f — tincture
fructus, us m — fruit	Testosterōnum, i n — testosterone
injectio, ōnis f — injection	unguentum, i n — ointment
linimentum, i n — liniment	vaginālis, e — vaginal
Leonūrus, i m — motherwort	

### II. English-Latin dictionary

adonis — Adōnis, ĩdis f	matricary — Chamomilla, ae f
antipyrin — Antipyrīnum, i n	medicinal — medicinālis, e
bark — cortex, ĩcis m	mint — Mentha, ae f
belladonna — Belladonna, ae f	narcosis — narcōsis, is f
children — infantes, ium m, f	oak — Quercus, us f
coated — obductus, a, um	ointment — unguentum, i n
compound — compositus, a, um	pepper — piperītus, a, um

decoction — decoctum, i n  
 dry — siccus, a, um  
 ether — aether, ěris m  
 extract — extractum, i, n  
 flower — flos, floris m  
 for — pro (+ Abl.)  
 foxglove — Digitālis, is f  
 herb — herba, ae f  
 leaf — folium, i n  
 liquid — fluīdus, a, um

powder — pulvis, ěris m  
 rhizome — rhizōma, ātis n  
 root — radix, ĩcis f  
 simple — simplex, ĩcis  
 species — species, ěrum f (only plur.)  
 spring — vernālis, e  
 tablet — tabuleta, ae f  
 tea — thea, ae f  
 tetracycline — Tetracyclīnum, i n  
 valerian — Valeriāna, ae f

## Lesson 9

### **LATIN IN THE MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION. STANDARD VERB FORMS INDICATING ORDER AND INSTRUCTIONS IN MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION. GENERAL RULES OF MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION**

#### **§ 61. Current use of Latin in medical prescription**

The use of Latin medical prescription nowadays is still common in many states of Europe, particularly in the countries of the former USSR including the Republic of Belarus and Russian Federation. That's why the rules of proper use of Latin in medical prescriptions are obligatory in medical university education programs of these states. Latin inscriptions are written on the labels of drug packing, reference books, and in medical prescriptions.

#### **§ 62. The Imperative verb forms used in a simple medical prescription**

The Latin part of a medical prescription begins with the Imperative form *Recīpe*: – Take: This word is addressed to a pharmacist to use the drug to make the prescription.

If the drug is produced by a pharmaceutical plant then the prescription includes the name of this drug which is written after the *Recīpe*:

*Recīpe*: Unguenti Tetracyclini ophthalmici 10,0

Take: Ointment of ophthalmic tetracycline 10,0

*Recīpe*: Extracti Crataegi fluīdi 25 ml

Take: Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml

After that in the new line two standard Imperative verb forms follow:

*Da*. (Give) and *Signa* (Write on the label) so that the full prescription gets the following forms:

*Recīpe*: Unguenti Tetracyclīni 10

*Da*. *Signa*:

Take: Ointment of tetracycline 10,0

Give. Write on the label:



## § 64. The structure of a complex medical prescription

Sometimes the physician asks the pharmacist to prepare a drug in the pharmacy. In this case, he writes down all components of this drug. Such a prescription is called a complex one. Naturally, in such prescription the physician indicates some components to be mixed: **Misce** — Mix. He can also define more precisely, for what purpose the mixing is necessary — that is for making some drug form. In this case, two forms are used: **fiat** for the nouns in the Singular and **fiant** for the nouns in the Plural:

**Misce, fiat pulvis** — Mix to make a powder

**Misce, fiant suppositoria vaginalia** — Mix to make vaginal suppositories

One should remember, that the Imperative form **Misce** only is used in the combination with the forms **fiat** and **fiant**.

Sometimes, the physician indicates in which form and in what amount the drug is to be prepared. In this case, he writes down these standard forms:

**Da (Dentur) tales doses numĕro ... in tabulettis (ampullis, capsulis etc)** — Give (Let be given) in such dose amount... in tablets (ampoules, capsules etc.) form

If two or more components are taken in the same amount, the dose is indicated only after the latter one, and the adverb **ana** “of each” is written before this amount:

Recĭpe: Corticis Frangŭlae	Take: Cortex of buckthorn
Foliŏrum Urtĭcae ana 15,0	Leaves of nettle of each 15,0

Now, let's see some complex medical prescriptions with different standard phrases:

Recĭpe: Sulfadimezini	Take: Sulfadimezin
Streptocidi	Streptocid
Synthomycini ana 1,0	Synthomycin of each 1,0
Misce, fiat pulvis	Mix to make a powder
Detur	Let it be given
Signĕtur:	Let it be labelled:
Recĭpe: Euphyllini 0,2	Take: Euphyllin
Butyri Cacao 2,0	Cocoa oil 2,0
Misce, fiat suppositorium	Mix to make a suppository
Da tales doses numĕro 6	Give such dose in the amount 6
Signa:	Write on the label:

## § 65. Some peculiarities of quantity expression in the medical prescription

Sometimes, the amount of oils or other liquids can be indicated in drops. The number of drops is written in Roman figures. If one drop is indicated, so

the Accusative Singular form **guttam** is used, if more than one, the Accusative plural form **guttas**:

Recīpe: Olei Menthae piperītae guttam I      Take: Mint pepper oil I drop  
 Recīpe: Olei Eucalypti guttas V              Take: Eucalypt oil V drops

In some cases, the physician doesn't indicate the dosage of a complex prescription component and lets the pharmacist determine the quantity of this component on his own. In this case, the standard expression **quantum satis** — in sufficient amount — is used:

Recīpe: Chinosōli 0,03	Take: Chinosol 0,03
Acīdi borīci 0,3	Boric acid 0,3
Tannini 0,06	Tannin 0,06
Olei Cacao quantum satis, fiat suppositorium vaginale	Cocoa oil in sufficient amount to make vaginal suppository
Da tales doses numēro 6	Give such dose in the amount 6
Signa:	Write on the label:

### § 66. Some important rules for making up the Latin part of medical prescription

1. Every new line begins with the capital letter.
2. Every first letter of the following new line is written strictly under the first letter of the previous one.
3. If the prescription text is to be continued in the next line, the first letter in the next line should begin under the fourth letter of the previous one.
4. Any correction in the prescription text is forbidden.

### § 67. Morphological roots of plant origin indicating alkaloids and glycosides with different pharmaceutical effects

Morphological roots	Latin examples	English equivalents
<b>-anth-</b>	Galanthamīnum, i n Helianthus, i m	Galanthamin sunflower
<b>-eph-, -ephedr-, -phedr-</b>	Ephatīnum, i n Ephedrīnum, i n Theophedrīnum, i n	ephatin ephedrin theophedrin
<b>-glyc(y)-</b>	Glycerīnum, i n Corglycōnum, i n Glycyrrhīza, ae f <b>Sed: Glucōsum, i n</b>	glycerin corglycon licorice <b>But: glucose</b>
<b>-phyll-</b>	Euphyllīnum, i n Platyphyllīnum, i n	euphylline platyphylline

<b>Morphological roots</b>	<b>Latin examples</b>	<b>English equivalents</b>
<b>-phyt</b>	Phytīnum, i n Phytolysīnum, i n	phytin phytolysin
<b>-stroph-</b>	Strophanthus, i m Strophosānum, i n	strophanthus strophosan
<b>-the(o)-</b>	Theobromīnum, i n Theophyllīnum, i n	theobromin theophylline

## § 68. Exercises

**1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into English:**

Capsūlae Phytomenadiōni; Emulsum olei Helianthi; Granūla Glycyrami; Pulvis Phytīni pro infantibus; Solutio Corglycōni in ampullis; Solutio Glucōsi pro injectionibus; Suppositoria cum Euphyllīno; Tabulettae «Theophedrinum»; Theophyllīnum in tabulettis

**2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:**

aerosol of ephatin; dry (liquid) extract of licorice; glyceric solution of ichthyol; oily solution of phytomenadion; pectoral species; tincture of strophanthus; sunflower oil for emulsion; suppositories with theophylline; sublingual tablets of glycin

**3. Write down the dictionary form of the nouns and adjectives as well as standard verb forms indicating order or instruction in medical prescription; translate the texts of medical prescriptions into Latin:**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Take: Soluble streptocid 5,0<br>Solution of glucose 10 % —<br>100 ml<br>Mix. Let it be sterilized!<br>Give. Write on the label:  | 2. Take: Theophylline 0,2<br>Cocoa oil 2,0<br>Mix to make a rectal<br>suppository<br>Give. Write on the label:   |
| 3. Take: Tincture of srophanthus 5 ml<br>Tincture of lily of the valley<br>Tincture of valerian of each<br>10 ml<br>Let it be mixed<br>Let it be given<br>Let it be labelled: | 4. Take: Cortex of althea<br>Cortex of licorice<br>Seed of flax of each 10,0<br>Leaves of eucalyptus 2,5<br>Mix to make a species<br>Give. Write on the label: |
| 5. Take: Solution of strophanthine<br>0,05 % — 1 ml<br>Give in such dose amount 10<br>in ampoules<br>Write on the label:  | 6. Take: Oily solution of nitroglycerin<br>1 % — 0,0005<br>Let it be given in such dose<br>amount 20 in capsules<br>Let it be labelled:                        |

7. Take: Chloroform  
 Sunflower oil of each 20 ml  
 Mix to make a liniment  
 Let it be given  
 Let it be labelled:

8. Take: Ichthyol 3,0  
 Vaseline up to 30,0  
 Mix to make an ointment  
 Give.  
 Write on the label:

## § 69. Vocabulary to lesson 15

### I. Latin-English vocabulary

ampulla, ae f — ampoule  
 capsula, ae f — capsule  
 Corglycōnum, i n — corglycon  
 emulsum, i n — emulsion  
 Euphyllīnum, i n — euphylline  
 Glycyrāmum, i n — glycyram  
 Glucōsum, i n — glucose  
 granūlum, i n — granule  
 Helianthus, i m — sunflower

infans, ntis m, f — child  
 Phytīnum, i n — phytin  
 Phytomenadiōnum, i n — phytomenadion  
 pulvis, ěris m — powder  
 solutio, ōnis f — solution  
 tabuletta, ae f — tablet  
 Theophedrinum, i n — theophedrine  
 Thehophyllīnum, i n — theophylline

### II. English-Latin vocabulary

aerosol — aērosōlum, i n  
 althea — Althaea, ae f  
 ampoule — ampulla, ae f  
 capsule — capsula, ae f  
 chloroform — Chloroformium, i n  
 cocoa — Cacāo (without  
 a dictionary form)  
 extract — extractum, i n  
 ephatin — Ephatīnum, i n  
 emulsion — emulsum, i n  
 eucalyptus — Eucalyptus, i f  
 flax — Linum, i n  
 glucose — Glucōsum, i n  
 glyceric — glycerinōsus, a, um  
 glycin — Glycīnum, i n  
 ichthyol — Ichthyōlum, i n  
 leafe — folium, i n  
 licorice — Glycyrrhīza, ae f  
 lily of the valley — Convallaria, ae f

liniment — linimentum, i n  
 Nitroglycerin — Nitroglycerīnum, i n  
 oil — oleum, i n  
 oily — oleōsus, a, um  
 pectoral — pectorālis, e  
 phytomenadion — Phytomenadiōnum, i n  
 rectal — rectālis, e  
 seed — semen, ĩnis n  
 soluble — solubīlis, e  
 solution — solutio, ōnis f  
 species — species, ērum f (only Plural)  
 streptocide — Streptocīdum, i n  
 strophanthine — Strophanthīnum, i n  
 strophanthus — Strophanthus, i m  
 sublingual — sublinguālis, e  
 sunflower — Helianthus, i m  
 theophylline — Theophyllīnum, i n  
 up to — ad  
 Vaseline — Vaselīnum, i n



## § 71. The prescription of tablets in the Accusative form

The drug prescription in tablets may proceed in three forms.

In the first case after *Recīpe* the Accusative singular form *Tabulettam* is written, then follow the drug name in the Genitive form and the dose. In the second line of the prescription the instruction *Da* (*Dentur*) *tales doses numĕro ... in tabulettis* is written and after that the standard verb form *Signa* (*Signetur*) follows:

<i>Recīpe:</i> <i>Tabulettam Paracetamoli 0,3</i>	<i>Take:</i> Tablet of paracetamol 0,3
<i>Da tales doses numero 6 in tabulettis</i>	Give such a dose in the amount 6 in tablets
<i>Signa:</i>	Write on the label:

In the second case after “*Recīpe*” the Accusative plural form “*Tabulettas*” is written, then follow the drug name in the Genitive form and figures indicating the amount of active medical substance of a tablet and, finally, the dosage expressed by the “*numero*” and a figure:

<i>Recīpe:</i> <i>Tabulettas Paracetamōli 0,3 numero 6</i>	<i>Take:</i> Tablet of paracetamol 0,3 number 6
<i>Da</i>	<i>Give</i>
<i>Signa:</i>	Write on the label:

But the same drug can be prescribed in a traditional form indicating the drug quantity, and that is the third way of drug prescribing in the tablet form. In this case after “*Recīpe*” the drug name and its dose follow. In the second line the instruction *Da* (*Dentur*) *tales doses numĕro 6 in tabulettis* and, finally, the standard form *Signa* (*Signetur*) are written:

<i>Recīpe:</i> <i>Paracetamōli 0,3</i>	<i>Take:</i> Paracetamol 0,3
<i>Da tales doses numĕro 6 in tabulettis</i>	Give such a dose in the amount 6 in tablets
<i>Signa:</i>	Write on the label:

It is absolutely imperative that every doctor is to know all the ways of writing out medical prescriptions. But the choice of a prescription form is up to him.

## § 72. The prescription of drops in the Accusative form

Drops (as the equivalent in Latin pharmaceutical terminology the French word “*dragées*” is used) are now prescribed mainly in the plural form. From the grammar point of view, the “*dragées*” is considered as Accusative depending on the word *Recīpe*, but as a French word, it has no case and dictionary form. The prescription regulations for drops are the following. After the *Recīpe* follow





<b>Morphological roots</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>Latin examples</b>	<b>English equivalents</b>
<b>-cain-</b>	anesthetic effect	Novocaīnum, i n Ultracaīnum, i n	novocain ultracain
<b>-camph-</b>	influence on the central and peripheral nervous system	Bromcamphōra, ae f Camphōnium, i n	bromcamphora camphonium
<b>-erythr-, -eryth-, -ery-</b>	1) containing erythromycin 2) produced from erythrocytes	Erythromycīnum, i n Eryhaemum, i n Erycyclīnum, i n	erythromycīn eryhaem erycycline
<b>-haem-</b>	haemostatic or haematopoiesis stimulating effect	haemostatīcus, a, um Haemostimulīnum, i n	haemostatic haemostimulin
<b>-oestr-</b>	female genital hormones	Oestradiōlum, i n Synoestrōlum, i n	oestradiol synoestrol
<b>-test-</b>	male genital hormones	Medrotestrōnum, i n Testosterōnum, i n	medrotestron testosteron
<b>-thym-</b>	immunity stimulators produced by thymus	Thymalīnum, i n Thymoptīnum, i n	thymalin thymoptin
<b>-thyr(e)-</b>	correction of thyroid function	Thyreoidīnum, i n Rifathyroīnum, i n	thyroidin rifathyroin

## § 77. Exercises

**1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from Latin into English:**

Ampullae cum pulvĕre Rifathyroīni; Granūla Erycyclīni in capsūlis; Injectiōnes Thymalīni pro adultis; Lamellae ophthalmīcae cum Dicaīno; Pulvis Dicaīni crystallisātus; Solutio Pyromecaīni pro infusionibus intravenōsis; Spongia haemostatīca in vitro vitreo; Suppositoria “Anaesthesōlum”; Thyreoidīnum in tabulettis

**2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:**

anaesthesin for narcosis; camphoric spirit for triturating; eryhaem in vitreous phials; haemostatic plaster of feracryl; oily solution of synoestrol in the ampoules; testoenat for injections; tablets of pregoestrol; solution of thymogen for intranasal introduction

**3. Give the dictionary form of the nouns and the adjectives; translate into Latin:**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Take: Coated tablets of allochol for children number 25<br>Give. Write on the label: | 2. Take: Capsules of oestradiol 0,14 number 12<br>Give. Write on the label:            |
| 3. Take: Thyreoidin 0,05<br>Let it be given of such a dose number 50 in tablets         | 4. Take: Solution of haemophobin 5 ml<br>Give such a dose in the amount 10 in ampoules |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>Let it be labelled:</p> <p>5. Take: Erynit 0,1<br/>Give such a dose in<br/>the amount 20 in tablets<br/>Write on the label:</p> <p>7. Take: Vaginal suppositories with<br/>synthomycin 0,15<br/>number 10<br/>Give. Write on the label:</p> <p>9. Take: Hemostatic collagen sponge<br/>Let it be given of such a dose<br/>number 4 in plastic packets<br/>Let it be labelled:</p> | <p>Write on the label:</p> <p>6. Take: Ophthalmic films with<br/>neomycin number 8<br/>Let it be given<br/>Let it be labelled:</p> <p>8. Take: Aerosol of camphomen<br/>Give such a dose<br/>in the amount 2<br/>Write on the label:</p> <p>10. Take: Anaesthesin 2,5<br/>Cocoa oil in sufficient amount<br/>to make a rectal suppository<br/>Let it be given of such a dose<br/>number 50 in tablets<br/>Let it be labelled:</p> |
|--|---|

## § 78. Vocabulary to lesson 10

### *Latin-English vocabulary*

adultus, a, um — adult	lamella, ae f — film (ophthalmic)
ampulla, ae f — ampoule	Oestradiolum, i n — oestradiol
“Anaesthesolum” (Anaesthesolum, i n) — anaesthesol	ophthalmicus, a, um — ophthalmic
capsula, ae f — capsule	Pyromecinum, i n — pyromecain
crystallisatus, a, um — crystal	pulvis, ěris m — powder
Dicainum, i n — dicain	Rifathyroinum, i n — rifathyroin
Erycyclinum, i n — erycyclin	spongia, ae f — sponge
granulum, i n — granule	Thymalinum, i n — thymalin
haemostaticus, a, um — haemostatic	Thyreoidinum, i n — thyreoidin
infusio, ōnis f — infusion	vitrum, i n — phial, glass
intravenosus, a, um — intravenous	vitreus, a, um — vitreous

### *English-Latin vocabulary*

aerosol — aërosolum, i n	introduction — inductio, ōnis f
ampoule — ampulla, ae f	neomycin — Neomycinum, i n
anaesthesin — Anaesthesinum, i n	oily — oleosus, a, um
camphomen — “Camphomenum” (Camphomenum, i n)	packet — fasciculus, i m
camphoric — camphoratus, a, um	phial — vitrum, i n
collagen — collagenicus, a, um	plaster — emplastrum, i n
eryhaem — Eryhaemum, i n	plastic — polyaethylenicus, a, um
	pregoestrol — Praegoestrolum, i n

erynit — Erynitum, i n  
 erythromycin — Erythromycīnum, i n  
 feracryl — “Feracrylum”  
 (Feracrylum, i n)  
 glass — 1) vitrum, i n; 2) vitreus, a, um  
 haemophobin — Haemophobīnum, i n  
 haemostatic — haemostaticus, a, um  
 in sufficient amount — quantum satis  
 intranasal — intranasālis, e

spirit (alcohol) — spirītus, us m  
 sponge — spongia, ae f  
 synthomycin — Synthomycīnum, i n  
 synoestrol — Synoestrōlum, i n  
 testoenat — Testoenātum, i n  
 trituration — trituration, ōnis f  
 thymogen — Thymogēnum, i n  
 vaginal — vaginālis, e

## Lesson 11

### LATIN NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS, ACIDS, OXIDES, HYDROXIDES, PEROXIDES

#### § 79. Latin names of chemical elements

Latin names of chemical elements are, as a rule, nouns of the second declension and of the neuter gender beginning always with a capital letter:

Aluminium, i n — aluminum

Ferrum, i n — iron

Zincum, i n — zinc

Nouns of two chemical elements are exception from this rule:

Phosphorus, i m — phosphorus

Sulfur, ūris n — sulphur (in American English the spelling is sulfur)

Some elements have double names:

fluorine — Fluōrum, i n = Phthorum, i n

magnesium — Magnium, i n = Magnesium, i n

See the chemical element names of most common usage in the table below:

Latin chemical symbols	Latin names	English names
Al	Aluminium	aluminium
Ag	Argentum	silver
As	Arsenicum	arsenic
Au	Aurum	gold
Ba	Barium	barium
Bi	Bismuthum	bismuth
Br	Bromum	bromine
Ca	Calcium	calcium
C	Carboneum	carbon
Cl	Chlorum	chlorine
Cu	Cuprum	copper
Fe	Ferrum	iron
F	Fluōrum seu Phthorum	fluorine

Latin chemical symbols	Latin names	English names
Hg	Hydrargyrum	mercury
H	Hydrogenium	hydrogen
I	Iōdum	iodine
K	Kalium	potassium
Li	Lithium	lithium
Mg	Magnium seu Magnesium	magnesium
Mn	Mangānum	manganese
Na	Natrium	sodium
N	Nitrogenium	nitrogen
O	Oxygenium	oxygen
Pb	Plumbum	lead
P	Phosphorus	phosphorus
Si	Silicium	silicon
S	Sulfur	sulphur (sulfur)
Zn	Zincum	zinc

### § 80. Latin names of acids

Every Latin acid name consists of the noun *acĭdum* (acid) and an adjective of the first group with the ending **-um** in accordance with the rules of grammar agreement. One should, hereby, pay attention, that in the dictionary form, both nouns and adjective are written with a small letter but in the combination with adjectives the noun *acĭdum* is written with a capital letter:

*acĭdum*, i n — acid

*borĭcus*, a, um — boric

**but:** *Acĭdum borĭcum*

There are three variants of Latin acid names. The first two variants cover the names of acids which include oxygen, the last one — the names of acids without oxygen.

In the first variant, when an acid contains the greatest amount of oxygen, the suffix **-ic-** and the ending **-um** are added to the stem of a chemical element. English equivalents of these Latin adjectives have the suffix **-ic** as a final element:

Latin noun of chemical element	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur-	sulfurĭcus, a, um	Acĭdum sulfurĭcum (H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> )	sulphuric acid

The same way of acid names building is used when names of organic acids are formed:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
lac, lactis n (milk)	lact-	lactĭcus, a, um	Acĭdum lactĭcum	lactic acid

In the second variant when the acid of the same element contains lesser amount of oxygen, the suffix **-os-** is used. In this case English equivalents have the ending **-ous**:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur-	sulfurōsus, a, um	Acīdum sulfurōsum (H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>3</sub> )	sulphurous acid

In the third variant, when an acid doesn't contain oxygen, the prefix **hydro-** and the suffix **-ic-** are added to the stem:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur-	hydrosulfurīcus, a, um	Acīdum sulfurōsum (H <sub>2</sub> S)	hydrosulphuric acid

One should remember that in acid names (as well as in salt names) formed from the noun Nitrogenium only a part of the stem is used: **-nitr-**:

Acīdum nitrīcum — nitric acid

Acīdum nitrōsum — nitrous acid

### § 81. Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides

Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides consist of two words. The first one is always the Genitive form of a chemical element, then the Nominative form oxŷdum (hydroxŷdum, peroxydum) follows:

Zinci oxŷdum — zinc oxide

Alumini hydroxŷdum — aluminum hydroxide

Hydrogenii peroxydum — hydrogen peroxide

The names oxŷdum, hydroxŷdum, peroxydum are nouns of the neutral gender of the second declension:

oxŷdum, i n

hydroxŷdum, i n

peroxydum, i n

### § 82. Morphological roots reflecting chemical information

Morpho-logical roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
- <b>(a)z-</b> , - <b>(a)zid-</b> , - <b>(a)zin-</b> , - <b>(a)zol-</b> , - <b>(a)zon-</b>	presence of nitrogen in the heterocyclic compounds	Azaleptīnum, i n Phthivazīdum, i n Sulfapyridazīnum, i n Norsulfazōlum, i n Sibazōnum, i n	azaleptin phthivazid sulfapyridazin norsulfazol sibazon

<b>Morpho-logical roots</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>Latin examples</b>	<b>English equivalents</b>
<b>-benz-</b>	presence of benzene ring	Benzohexonium, i n benzoicus, a, um	benzohexon benzoic
<b>-cyan-</b>	cyanic acid, its anions or a cyan group	Cyanocobalamīnum, i n cyanidum, i n	cyanocobalamine cyanide
<b>-hydr-, -hyd-</b>	presence of hydrogen, water or a hydroxyl group	Hydrogenium, i n Formaldehydum, i n	hydrogen formaldehyde
<b>-naphth-</b>	products of petroleum	Naphthalānum, i n Naphthyzīnum, i n	naphthalan naphthyzin
<b>-oxy-</b>	presence of oxygen and its compounds	Chinoxydīnum, I n Oxylidīnum, i n	chinoxidin oxylidin
<b>-phtha(l)-</b>	derivatives of phthalic acid	Phthalazōlum, i n Phthazōlum, i n	phthalazol phthazol
<b>-phthor-</b>	presence of fluorine compounds	Phthorocortum, i n Phthoracizīnum, i n	phthoracizin phthorocort
<b>-sulf-</b>	presence of sulphur or its derivatives	Norsulfazōlum, i n sulfas, ātis m	norsulphazol sulphate
<b>-thi-</b>	presence of sulphur atom in the names of thiosalts and thioacids	Thiopentālum, i n thiosulfas, ātis m	thiopental thiosulphate
<b>-yl-</b>	presence of carbohydrogenic radicals	Benzylpenicillīnum, i n salicylicus, a, um	benzylpenicillin salicylic

### § 83. Exercises

#### 1. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:

Acīdum arsenicōsum anhydricum; Acīdum ascorbinicum in dragées; Cyanocobalamīnum seu Vitamīnum B<sub>12</sub>; Emplastrum Plumbi simplex; Emulsum Erythrofosphatīdi in ampullis; Phthalazōlum in tabulettis; Pulvis Magnesii oxydi; Sirūpus Aloēs cum Ferro; Sulfacylum solubile pro injectionibus; Suspensio Hydrocortisoni in flaconibus; Tabulettae Acīdi folīci; Tabulettae Acīdi acetysalicylici enterosolubiles

#### 2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:

1) ascorbic acid in drops; coated tablets of glutaminic acid; clear hydrochloric acid; diluted solution of hydrogen peroxide; emulsion of castor oil; granules of furazolidon for children; powder of foxglove leaves; solution of nicotinic acid; solution of soluthizon for intratracheal injection; spirituous solution of iodine for internal use; suspension of aluminium hydroxide; tablets of lipoic acid; thioacetazon in tablets; white powder of sulphadimidine; yellow mercury oxide

**3. Give the dictionary form both of the nouns and the adjectives, translate the medical prescriptions:**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Take: Tablets of phthalazol 0,05<br/>number 20<br/>Give. Write on the label:</p>   | <p>2. Take: Naphthalan ointment 50,0<br/>Let it be given<br/>Let it be labelled:</p>   |
| <p>3. Take: Clear hydrochloric acid 6,0<br/>Distilled water up to 100 ml<br/>Let it be mixed<br/>Let it be given<br/>Let it be labelled:</p>   | <p>4. Take: Purified sulphur<br/>Peach oil of each 30,0<br/>Let it be mixed<br/>Let it be sterilized!<br/>Let it be given<br/>Let it be labelled:</p>                |
| <p>5. Take: Streptocide<br/>Sulphadimezin<br/>Norsulphazol of each 5,0<br/>Mix to make the finest<br/>powder<br/>Let it be given<br/>Let it be labelled:</p>   | <p>6. Take: Glutaminic acid 1,5<br/>Solution of glucose 25 % —<br/>450 ml<br/>Mix<br/>Give<br/>Write on the label:</p>   |
| <p>7. Take: Menthol 0,1<br/>Zinc oxide<br/>Boric acid of each 0,5<br/>Vaseline 10,0<br/>Mix to make an ointment<br/>Give<br/>Write on the label:</p>   | <p>8. Take: Boric acid 5,0<br/>Zinc oxide<br/>Wheat starch of each 25,0<br/>Ointment of naphthalan 45,0<br/>Mix to make a paste<br/>Give<br/>Write on the label:</p> |
| <p>9. Take: Ascorbic acid 0,2<br/>Nicotinic acid<br/>Riboflavin of each 0,25<br/>Distilled water up to 100 ml<br/>Let it be mixed<br/>Let it be given<br/>Let it be labelled:</p>                      | <p>10. Take: Yellow hydrogen oxide 0,6<br/>Ichthyol 0,8<br/>Zinc ointment 20,0<br/>Mix to make a paste<br/>Give<br/>Write on the label:</p>                          |
| <p>11. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,015<br/>Powder of rhubarb root<br/>Magnesium oxide of each<br/>0,3<br/>Mix to make a powder<br/>Give such a dose<br/>in the amount 10<br/>Write on the label:</p> | <p>12. Take: Salicylic acid<br/>Lactic acid of each 6,0<br/>Icy acetic acid 3,0<br/>Collodium up to 20,0<br/>Mix<br/>Give<br/>Write on the label:</p>                |

## § 84. Vocabulary to lesson 11

### I. Latin-English vocabulary

acetylsalicylicus, a, um — acetylsalicylic	Hydrocortisonum, i n — hydrocortisone
acidum, i n — acid	Magnesium, i n — magnesium
Aloë, es f — aloe	Naphthalanum, i n — naphthalan
anhydricus, a, um — anhydrous	Norsulfazolium, i n — norsulphazol
arsenicōsus, a, um — arsenous	oxydum, i n — oxide
ascorbinicus, a, um — ascorbic	Phthalazolium, i n — phthalazol
Cyanocobalaminum, i n — cyanocobalamin	Plumbum, i n — lead
depuratus, a, um — purified	Riboflavinum, i n — riboflavin
dragées — drops	Ricinus, i m — castor-oil plant
emplastrum, i n — plaster	seu — or
emulsum, i n — emulsion	simplex, icis — simple
enterosolubilis, e — enteric soluble	solubilis, e — soluble
Erythrophosphatidum, i n — erythrophosphatide	Streptocidum, i n — streptocide
Ferrum, i n — iron	Sulfacolum, i n — sulphacyl
flaco, onis m — phial	Sulfur, ūris n — sulphur
folicus, a, um — folic	suspensio, onis f — suspension
	vitaminum, i n — vitamin

### II. English-Latin vocabulary

acetic — aceticus, a, um	lipoic — lipoicus, a, um
acid — acidum, i n	mercury — Hydrargyrum, i n
aluminium — Aluminium, i n	naphthalan — Naphthalanum, i n
ascorbic — ascorbinicus, a, um	nicotinic — nicotinicus, a, um
boric — boricus, a, um	oxide — oxydum, i n
castor oil — oleum Ricini	paste — pasta, ae f
castor oil plant — Ricinus, i m	peach — Persicum, i n
clear — purus, a, um	peroxide — peroxydum, i n
coated — obductus, a, um	phthalazol — Phthalazolium, i n
collodium — Collodium, i n	peach oil — Oleum Persicorum
diluted — dilutus, a, um	rhubarb — Rheum, i n
distilled — destillatus, a, um	riboflavin — Riboflavinum, i n
drops — dragées	root — radix, icis f
emulsion — emulsum, i n	salicylic — salicylicus, a, um
finest — subtilissimus, a, um	soluthizon — Soluthizonum, i n
foxglove — Digitālis, is f	spirituous — spirituōsus, a, um
furazolidon — Furazolidonum, i n	starch — Amylum, i n
glutaminic — glutaminicus, a, um	sulphadimezine — Sulfadimezinum, i n
hydrochloric — hydrochloricus, a, um	sulphadimidine — Sulfadimidinum, i n

hydrogen — Hydrogenium, i n  
hydroxide — hydroxĭdum, i n  
ichthyol — Ichthyōlum, i n  
icy — glaciālis, e  
intratracheal — intratracheālis, e  
iodine — Iōdum, i n  
lactic — lactĭcus, a, um

thioacetazone — Thioacetazonum, i n  
up to — ad  
use — usus, us m  
vaseline — Vaselĭnum, i n  
water — aqua, ae f  
wheat — Tritĭcum, i n  
yellow — flavus, a, um

## Lesson 12

### LATIN NAMES OF SALTS ON THE LABELS OF DRUG NAMES AND IN MEDICAL PRESCRIPTIONS

#### § 85. Latin names of salts, whose anions contain oxygen

Latin names of salts consist of two parts. First goes the Genitive case of a cation (a chemical element name or, more seldom, a drug name), in the second place is the Nominative of an anion. Anion names are always written with a small letter. If we speak of anions derivatives of acids containing oxygen of different degrees, two variants of these anions are distinguished:

1. Names of anions containing the greatest amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings **-as** in the Nominative and **-ātis** in the Genitive singular: Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> — Natrii sulfas → sulfas, ātis m:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub>	Natrii sulfas	sulfas, ātis m	sulphate	sodium sulphate
NaNO <sub>3</sub>	Natrii nitras	nitras, ātis m	nitrate	sodium nitrate

So, one can very easily find out the correlation between English and Latin anion names of the first group: the English ending **-ate** corresponds to the Latin ending **-as**. In this way we may instantly determine Latin equivalents of English anions without analyzing their chemical composition, including all the anions of organic acids having the ending **-ate** too:

sodium salicylate — Natrii salicylas

testosterone propionate — Testosterōni propionas

2. The names of anions containing lesser amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings **-is** in the Nominative and **-ītis** in the Genitive singular: Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>3</sub> — Natrii sulfis → sulfis, ītis m:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>3</sub>	Natrii sulfis	sulfis, ītis m	sulphite	sodium sulphite
NaNO <sub>2</sub>	Natrii nitris	nitris, ītis m	nitrite	sodium nitrite

As you can see, the Latin anion ending **-is** corresponds to the English anion ending **-ite**, and it allows, as it is seen above, to determine any necessary equivalent taking as well into consideration the spelling of each separate word.

### § 86. Latin names of salts whose anions do not contain oxygen

The names of anions which don't contain oxygen are neutral nouns of the second declension with the suffix **-id-** and the ending **-um**:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na <sub>2</sub> S	Natrii sulfidum	sulfidum, i n	sulphide	sodium sulphide
NaCl	Natrii chloridum	chloridum, i n	chloride	sodium chloride

So, the complex ending **-idum** of the Latin anions which don't contain oxygen corresponds to the English ending **-ide** in the anions with the similar chemical compound.

**Conclusion:** if you remember the endings of the three seen above variants of Latin anions and if you know which Latin anion ending corresponds to the English one, you do not need to know the chemical compound of any salt to express correctly both English and Latin salt name.

### § 87. Anion names of basic salts

Latin anion names of basic salts are formed by adding the prefix **sub-**:

Bismūthi subnītras — basic nitrate of bismuth

Aluminii subacētas — basic acetate of aluminium

### § 88. Two-component names of potassium and sodium salts

Two-component Latin names of potassium and sodium salts are written with a hyphen. Each component of such a name is a neutral noun of the second declension. The second component following the hyphen is written with a small letter. In the dictionary form, after the two-component Nominative cases the ending **-i** and the gender sign **n** follow. English equivalents of these terms are written without a hyphen:

Sulfacylum-natrium, i n — sulphacyl sodium

Benzympenicillīnum- kalium, i n — benzympenicillin potassium

## § 89. Morphological roots reflecting pharmaceutical information

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
<b>-aeth-</b>	presence of ethyl group	aethylīcus, a, um Aethynālum, i n	ethylic etynal
<b>-lysin-, -lytin-</b>	removing some destructive factor	Phytolysīnum, i n Broncholytīnum, i n	phytolysin broncholytin
<b>-meth-</b>	presence of methyl group	Methylēnum, i n Methylium, i n	methylen methyl
<b>-morph-</b>	analgetics, derivatives of morphine	Apomorphīnum, i n Morpholongum, i n	apomorphin morpholong
<b>-phen-</b>	presence of phenyl group	Phenōlum, i n Phthorophenazīnum, in	phenol phthorophenazin
<b>-phthi-</b>	antitubercular effect	Phthivazīdum, i n Phthizopyrāmum, i n	ftivazide phthizopyram
<b>-poly-</b>	large number, multitude	polyvitaminōsus, a, um Polyamīnum, i n	multivitaminous polyamin
<b>-thromb-</b>	thrombolytics, against thrombosis	Thrombīnum, i n Thrombocytinim, i n	thrombin thrombocytin

## § 90. Exercises

**1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from Latin into English:**

Aether stabilisātus pro narcosi; Barii sulfas pro rentgeno; Cerebrolysīnum in ampullis ad usum parenterālem; Emulsum Benzylī benzoātis medicinālis; Granūla Aethazōli-natrii pro infantibus; Membranūlae ophthalmīcae cum Atropīni sulfāte; Methylēnum coeruleum in capsūlis; Phenylī salicylas in tabulettis; Pulvis Phenoxyethylpenicillīni pro suspensiōne; Solutio Aethacidīni lactātis spirituōsa; Species polyvitaminōsae et pectorāles; Tabulettae Calcii orotātis; Theobrominum-natrium cum Natrii salicylāte; Spirītus aethylīcus rectificātus; Vitamīnum B<sub>6</sub> seu Pyridoxini hydrochlorīdum

**2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:**

basic acetate of lead; basic nitrate of bismuth with belladonna extract; coated tablets of tetracycline hydrochloride; hypertonic solution of sodium chloride; isotonic solution of sodium chloride; morpholong for intramuscular injections; ointment of copper citrate; ophthalmic films with fibrinolysin; polyethylenoxide for intravenous use; powder of sarcolysin for solution; precipitated calcium carbonate; rectified ethylic spirit; solution of terrilytin for inhalation; suppositories of methyluracil; syrup of broncholytin in phials; tablets of ethylmorphine hydrochloride for adults; tablets of phthivazid

**3. Give the dictionary form of both nouns and adjectives; translate the medical prescriptions:**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Take: Tincture of spring<br/>pheasant's eye herb<br/>180 ml<br/>Amidopyrin 2,0<br/>Sodium bromide 4,0<br/>Codeine phosphate 0,2<br/>Mix.<br/>Give.<br/>Write on the label:</p>  | <p>2. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,001<br/>Basic bismuth nitrate<br/>Phenyl salicylate of each<br/>0,25<br/>Mix to make a powder<br/>Give such a dose<br/>in the amount 10<br/>Write on the label:</p> |
| <p>3. Take: Ethylmorphine<br/>hydrochloride 0,1<br/>Vaseline 10,0<br/>Mix to make an ointment<br/>Give.<br/>Write on the label:</p>   | <p>4. Take: Rectified ethyl spirit<br/>95 % — 20 ml<br/>Water for injections 100 ml<br/>Let it be mixed<br/>Let it be given<br/>Let it be labelled:</p>   |
| <p>5. Take: Platyphylline hydrotartrate<br/>0,005<br/>Phenobarbital<br/>Papaverin hydrochloride of<br/>each 0,02<br/>Give such a dose<br/>in the amount 10<br/>Write on the label:</p>  | <p>6. Take: Dimedrol 0,01<br/>Ephedrin hydrochloride 0,1<br/>Peach oil 10 ml<br/>Mint oil I drop<br/>Mix<br/>Give. Write on the label:</p>  |
| <p>7. Take: Coated tablets of<br/>oleandoandomycin<br/>phosphate<br/>0,125 number 25<br/>Let it be given<br/>Let it be labelled:</p>  | <p>8. Take: Ophthalmic films with<br/>neomycin sulphate<br/>number 10<br/>Let it be given<br/>Let it be labelled:</p>   |
| <p>9. Take: Morphine hydrochloride<br/>0,01<br/>Apomorphine hydrochloride<br/>0,05<br/>Diluted hydrochloric acid<br/>1 ml<br/>Distilled water up to 2000<br/>ml<br/>Let it be mixed<br/>Let it be given<br/>Let it be labelled:</p> | <p>10. Take: Magnesium carbonate 4,0<br/>Potassium carbonate 5,0<br/>Sodium hydrocarbonate 1,0<br/>Glycerin in sufficient<br/>amount<br/>Mix to make a paste<br/>Give<br/>Write on the label:</p>       |

11. Take: Menthol  
 Ethylmorphine  
           hydrochloride of each  
           200 ml  
 Sugar 0,03  
 Mix to make a powder  
 Give such a dose in amount  
           10  
 Write on the label:

12. Take: Tincture of althea root  
           180 ml  
 Sodium hydrocarbonate  
 Sodium benzoate of each 5,0  
 Simple syrup 20,0  
 Mix. Give.  
 Write on the label:

## § 91. Vocabulary to lesson 18

### I. Latin-English vocabulary

Aethacridīnum, i n — ethacridine  
 Aethazōlum-natrium, i n — ethazol  
 sodium  
 aether, ěris m — ether  
 aethylīcus, a, um — ethyl  
 Althaea, ae f — althea  
 Apomorphinum, i n — apomorphine  
 Atropīnum, i n — atropin  
 benzoas, ātis m — benzoate  
 Benzylum, i n — benzyl  
 Calcium, i n — calcium  
 Cerebrolýsīnum, i n — cerebrolysin  
 coeruleus, a, um — blue  
 hydrochlorīdum, i n — hydrochloride  
 lactas, ātis m — lactate  
 medicinālis, e — medical  
 Methylēnum, i n — methylene  
 orōtas, ātis m — orotate

parenterālis, e — parenteral  
 pectorālis, e — pectoral  
 Phenoxyethylpenicillīnum, i n —  
 phenoxymethylpenicillin  
 Phenylīnum, i n — phenyl  
 polyvitaminōsus, a, um —  
 polyvitaminous  
 Pyridoxīnum, i n — pyridoxine  
 rentgēnum, i n — roentgenoscopy  
 salicylas, ātis m — salicylate  
 spirituōsus, a, um — spirituous  
 spirītus, us m — spirit  
 sulfas, ātis m — sulphate  
 suspensio, ōnis f — suspension  
 Theobrominum-natrium, i n —  
 theobromine sodium  
 vernālis, e — existing in spring  
 vitamīnum, i n — vitamin

### II. English-Latin vocabulary

amidopyrin — Amidopyrīnum, i n  
 apomorphine — Apomorphīnum, i n  
 basic acetate — subacētas, ātis m  
 basic nitrate — subnītras, ātis m  
 belladonna — Belladonna, ae f  
 benzoate — benzoas, ātis m  
 bismuth — Bismūthum, i n  
 bromide — bromīdum, i n  
 broncholytin — Broncholytīnum, i n

magnesium — Magnesium, i n  
 menthol — Menthōlum, i n  
 morphine — Morphīnum, i n  
 neomycin — Neomycīnum, i n  
 papaverine — Papaverīnum, i n  
 peach — Persicum, i n  
 peach oil — Oleum Persicōrum  
 phenobarbital — Phenobarbitālum,  
 i n

calcium — Calcium, i n	phenyl — Phenylum, i n
carbonate — carbōnas, ātis m	phosphate — phosphas, ātis m
chloride — chlorīdum, i n	phthivazid — Phthivazīdum, i n
citrate — citras, ātis m	platyphylline — Platyphyllīnum, i n
codeine — Codeīnum, i n	polyethylenoxide —
copper — Cuprum, i n	Polyaethylenoxīdum, i n
diluted — dilūtus, a, um	potassium — Kalium, i n
dimedrol — Dimedrōlum, i n	precipitated — praecipitātus, a, um
fibrinolysin — Fibrolysīnum, i n	salicylate — salic• las, ātis m
film — lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f	sarcocollin — Sarcocollīnum, i n
glycerin — Glycerīnum, i n	sodium — Natrium, i n
hydrocarbonate — hydrocarbōnas, atis m	spring Adonis (= spring pheasant's eye) — Adōnis (īdis m, f) vernālis (is, e)
hydrochloride — hydrochlorīdum, i n	spirit — spirītus, us m
hypertonic — hypertonīcus, a, um	sugar — Sacchārum, i n
inhalation — inhalatio, ōnis f	syrup — sirūpus, i m
intramuscular — intramusculāris, e	terrilytin — Terrilytīnum, i n
intravenous — intravenōsus, a, um	vaseline — Vaselīnum, i n
isotonic — isotonīcus, a, um	
lead — Plumbum, i n	

## § 92. Model (sample) of the final test in the pharmaceutical terminology

**1. Write down the dictionary forms of each word and translate in Latin the terms:**

1) basic bismuth nitrate; 2) peach oil; 3) rectified ethylic spirit; 4) ether for narcosis; 5) ascorbic acide in tablets; 6) liquid extract of hawthorn; 7) tincture of lily of the valley

**2. Write down the dictionary forms of the nouns and adjectives and translate the following prescriptions in Latin:**

Take: Ethylmorphine hydrochloride 0,1	Take: Oily solution of nitroglycerin
Vaseline 10,0	1 % - 0,0005
Mix to make an ointment	Let it be given in such dose
Give. Write on the label:	amount 20 in capsules
	Let it be labelled:
Take: Soluble streptocid 5,0	Take: Chloroform
Solution of glucose 10 % —	Sunflower oil of each 20 ml
100 ml	Mix to make a liniment
Mix. Let it be sterilized!	Let it be given
Give. Write on the label:	Let it be labelled:

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULAR

### A

**acetylsalicylicus, a, um**  
acetylsalicylic  
**acidum, i n** acid  
**ad (Acc.) for**  
**adultus, a, um** adult  
**Aethacridinum, i n** ethacridin  
**Aethazolum-natrium, i n** ethazol  
sodium  
**aether, ěris m** ether  
**aethylicus, a, um** ethylic  
**Aloë, ěs f** aloe  
**Althaea, ae f** althea  
**ampulla, ae f** ampoule  
**Anaesthesolum, i n** anaesthesol  
**anhydricus, a, um** anhydrous  
**Apomorphinum, i n** apomorphin  
**arsenicosus, a, um** arsenicous  
**ascorbinicus, a, um** ascorbic  
**Aspirinum, i n** aspirin  
**Atropinum, i n** atropin

### B

**Barium, i n**  
**benzoas, ātis m** benzoate  
**Benzylum, i n** benzyl

### C

**Calcium, i n** calcium  
**capsula, ae f** casule  
**Cerebrolysinum, i n** cerebrolysin  
**coeruleus, a, um** blue  
**Corglyconum, i n** corglycon  
**crystallisatus, a, um** crystal  
**cum (Abl.)** with  
**Cyanocobalaminum, i n**  
cyanocobalamin

### D

**depuratus, a, um** purified  
**Dibiomycinum, i n** dibiomycine  
**Dicaīnum, i n** dicain  
**dragée** drop

### E

**emplastrum, i n** plaster  
**emulsum, i n** emulsion  
**enterosolubilis, e in** enter soluble  
**Erycyclinum, i n** erycyclin  
**Erythrophosphatidum, i n**  
erythrophosphatide  
**et** and  
**Eucalyptus, i f** eucalyptus  
**Euphyllinum, i n** euphyllin  
**ex (Abl.)** from, of  
**extractum, i n** extract

### F

**Ferrum, i n** iron  
**flaco, ōnis m** phial  
**fluidus, a, um** liquid  
**follicus, a, um** folic  
**folium, i n** leaf  
**fructus, us m** fruit

### G

**Glucosum, i n** glucose  
**Glycyramum, i n** glycyram  
**granulum, i n** granule

### H

**haemostaticus, a, um** haemostatic  
**Helianthus, i m** sunflower  
**hydrochloridum, i n** hydrochloride  
**Hydrocortisonum, i n**  
hydrocortisone

**I**

**in (Abl)** in  
**infans, ntis m, f** child  
**infusio, ōnis f** infusion  
**injection, ōnis f** injection  
**intravenōsus, a, um** intravenous

**L**

**lactas, ātis m** lactate  
**lamella, ae f** film (ophthalmic)  
**Leonūrus, i m** motherwort  
**linimentum, i n** liniment

**M**

**Magnesium, i n** magnesium  
**medicinālis, e** medical  
**Methylēnum, i n** methylen

**N**

**Naphthalānum, i n** naphthalan  
**narcōsis, is f** narcosis  
**Natrium, i n** sodium  
**Norsulfazōlum, i n** norsulphazol

**O**

**obductus, a, um** coated  
**Oestradiolum, i n** oestradiol  
**oleum, i n** oil  
**ophthalmicus, a, um** ophthalmic  
**orōtas, ātis m** orotate  
**oxŷdum, i n** oxide

**P**

**parenterālis, e** parenteral  
**pectorālis, e** pectoral  
**Phenoxymethylpenicillīnum, i n**  
 phenoxymethylpenicillin  
**Phenylum, i n** phenyl  
**Phthalazōlum, i n** phthalazol  
**Phytīnum, i n** phytin  
**Phytomenadiōnum, i n**  
 phytomenadion

**Plumbum, i n** lead

**polyvitaminōsus, a, um**  
 polyvitaminous  
**pro (Abl.)** for  
**pulvis, ěris m** powder  
**Pyridoxīnum, i n** pyridoxine  
**Pyromecaīnum, i n** pyromecain

**Q**

**quantum satis** in sufficient amount  
**Quercus, us f** oak

**R**

**radix, ĩcis f** root  
**rectificātus, a, um** rectified  
**rentgenum, i n** roentgenoscopy  
**rhizōma, ātis n** rhizome  
**Riboflavinum, i n** riboflavin  
**Ricīnus, i m** castor oil plant  
**Rifathyroīnum, i n** rifathyroin  
**Rosa, ae f** dog rose, wild rose

**S**

**salicylas, ātis m** salicylate  
 seu or  
**simplex, ĩcis** simple  
**sirūpus, i m** syrup  
**solubīlis, e** soluble  
**solutio, ōnis f** solution  
**species, ěrum f** species  
**spirituōsus, a, um** spirituous  
**spirītus, us m** spirit  
**spongia, ae f** sponge  
**Streptocīdum, i n** streptocid  
**Sulfac• lum, i n** sulfacyl  
**sulfas, ātis m** sulphate  
**Sulfur, ūris n** sulphur  
**suppositorium, i n** suppository  
**suspensio, ōnis f** suspension  
**Synthomycīnum, i n** synthomycin

## **T**

**tabuleta, ae f** tablet

**Testosterōnum, i n** testosterone

**Theobrominum-natrium, i n**  
theobromin sodium

**Theophedrīnum, i n** theophedrin

**Thophyllīnum, i n** theophylline

**Thymalīnum, i n** thymalin

**Thyreoidīnum, i n** thyreoidin

**tinctūra, ae f** tincture

## **U**

**unguentum, i n** ointment

## **V**

**vaginālis, e** vaginal

**vitamīnum, i n** vitamin

**vitreus, a, um** vitreous

**vitrum, i n** phial, glass

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

### A

**acetic** acētīcus, a um  
**acid** acīdum, i n  
**adonis** Adōnis, īdis f  
**adonis vernalis, spring pheasant eye** Adōnis (īdis m, f) vernālis (is, e)  
**aerosol** aērosōlum, i n  
**althea** Althaea, ae f  
**aluminium** Aluminium, i n  
**amidopyrin** Amidopyrīnum, i n  
**ampoule** ampulla, ae f  
**anaesthesin** Anaesthesinum, i n  
**antiasthmatic** antiasthmaticus, a, um  
**antipyrin** Antipyrīnum, i n  
**apomorphin** Apomorphīnum, i n  
**ascorbic** ascorbinīcus, a, um

### B

**bark** cortex, īcis m  
**basic acetate** subacētas, ātis m  
**basic nitrate** subnitras, ātis m  
**belladonna** Belladonna, ae f  
**benzoate** benzoas, ātis m  
**bismuth** Bismūthum, i n  
**boric** borīcus, a, um

**bromide** bromīdum, i n  
**broncholytin** Broncholytīnum, i n

### C

**calcium** Calcium, i n  
**camphomen** “Camphomēnum”  
(Camphomēnum, i n)  
**camphoric** camphorātus, a, um  
**capsule** capsūla, ae f  
**carbonate** carbōnas, ātis m  
**castor oil** oleum (um, i n) Ricīni  
(us, i m)  
**children** infantes, ium m, f  
**chloride** chlorīdum, i n

**chloroform** Chloroformium, i n  
**citrate** citras, ātis m  
**clear** purus, a, um  
**coated** obductus, a, um  
**cocoa** Cacāo (without a dictionary  
form)  
**codeine** Codeīnum, i n  
**collagen** collagenīcus, a, um  
**collodium** Collodium, i n  
**compound** composītus, a, um  
**copper** Cuprum, i n

### D

**decoction** decoctum, i n  
**diluted** dilūtus, a, um  
**dimedrol** Dimedrōlum, in  
**distillated** destillātus, a, um  
**drops** dragées  
**dry** siccus, a, um

### E

**emulsion** emulsum, i n  
**ephatin** Ephatīnum, i n  
**eryhaem** Eryhaemum, i n  
**erynit** Erynitum, i n  
**erythromycin** Erythromycinum, i n  
**ether** aether, ěris m  
**eucalyptus** Eucalyptus, i f  
**extract** extractum, i n

### F

**feracryl** “Feracrylum”  
(Feracrylum, i n)  
**fibrinolysin** Fibrollysīnum, i n  
**film** lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f  
**finest** subtilissīmus, a, um  
**flax** Linum, i n  
**flower** flos, floris m  
**for** pro (Abl.)  
**foxglove** Digitālis, is f

**furazolidon** Furazolidōnum, i n

## G

**glass** 1) vitrum, i n 2) vitreus, a, um

**glucose** Glucōsum, i n

**glutaminic** glutaminīcus, a, um

**glyceric** glycerinōsus, a, um

**glycerin** Glycerīnum, i n

**glycin** Glycīnum, i n

## H

**haemophobin** Haemophobīnum, i n

**haemostatic** haemostatīcus, a, um

**hawthorn** Crataegus, i f

**herb** herba, ae f

**hydrocarbonate** hydrocarbōnas,  
ātis m

**hydrochloric** hydrochlorīcus, a, um

**hydrochloride** hydrochlorīdum, i n

**hydrogen** Hydrogenium, i n

**hydroxide** hydroxŷdum, i n

**hypertonic** hypertonīcus, a, um

## I

**ichthyol** Ichthyōlum, i n

**icy** glaciālis, e

**in sufficient amount** quantum satis

**inhaling** inhalatio, ōnis f

**intramuscular** intramusculāris, e

**intranasal** intranasālis, e

**intratracheal** intratracheālis, e

**intravenous** intravenōsus, a, um

**introduction** inductio, ōnis f

**iodine** Iōdum, i n

**isotonic** isotonīcus, a, um

## L

**lactic** lactīcus, a, um

**lead** Plumbum, i n

**leaf** folium, i n

**licorice** Glycyrrhīza, ae f

**lily of the valley** Convallaria, ae f

**liniment** linimentum, i n

**lipoic** lipoīcus, a, um

**liquid** fluīdus, a, um

## M

**magnesium** Magnesium, i n

**matricary** Chamomilla, ae f

**medicinal** medicinālis, e

**menthol** Menthōlum, i n

**mercury** Hydrargŷrum, i n

**mint** Mentha, ae f

**morphine** Morphīnum, i n

## N

**naphthalan** Naphthalānum, i n

**narcosis** narcōsis, is f

**neomycin** Neomycinum, i n

**nicotinic** nicotinīcus, a, um

**nitroglycerin** Nitroglycerīnum, i n

## O

**oak** Quercus, us f

**oil** oleum, i n

**oily** oleōsus, a, um

**ointment** unguentum, i n

**oxide** oxŷdum, i n

## P

**packet** fascicŷlus, i m

**papaverin** Papaverīnum, i n

**past** pasta, ae f

**peach** Persīcum, i n

**peach oil** Oleum (i, n) Persicōrum  
(um, i n)

**pectoral** pectorālis, e

**pepper** piperītus, a, um

**phenobarbital** Phenobarbitālum, i n

**phenyl** Phenylium, i n

**phial** vitrum, i n

**phosphate** phosphas, ātis m

**phthivazid** Phthivazīdum, i n

**phytomenadion** Phytomenadiōnum,  
i n

**plaster** emplastrum, i n

**plastic** polyaethylenīcus, a, um

**platyphylline** Platyphyllīnum, i n

**polyethylenoxid**

Polyaethylenoxīdum, i n

**potassium** Kalium, i n

**powder** pulvis, ěris m

**precipitated** praecipitātus, a, um

**pregoestrol** Praegoestrolum, i n

## R

**rectal** rectālis, e

**rhizome** rhizōma, ātis n

**rhubarb** Rheum, i n

**riboflavin** Riboflavīnum, i n

**root** radix, ĩcis f

## S

**salicylate** salicylas, ātis m

**salicylic** salicylīcus, a, um

**sarcolysin** Sarcolysīnum, i n

**seed** semen, ĩnis n

**simple** simplex, ĩcis

**sodium** Natrium, i n

**soluble** solubīlis, e

**soluthizon** Soluthizōnum, i n

**solution** solutio, ōnis f

**species** species, ěrum f (only plur.)

**spirit (alcohol)** spirĭtus, us m

**spirituous** spirituōsus, a, um

**sponge** spongia, ae f

**spring** vernālis, e

**starch** Amĭlum, i n

**streptocid** Streptocĭdum, i n

**strophanthine** Strophanthīnum, i n

**strophanthus** Strophanthus, i m

**sublingual** sublinguālis, e

**sugar** Sacchārum, i n

**sulphadimezin** Sulfadimezīnum, i n

**sulphadimidine** Sulfadimidīnum, i n

**sunflower** Helianthus, i m

**synoestrol** Synoestrōlum, i n

**synthomycin** Synthomycīnum, i n

**syrup** sirūpus, i m

## T

**tablet** tabuleta, ae f

**tea** thea, ae f

**terrilytin** Terrilytīnum, i n

**tertracycline** Tetracyclīnum, i n

**testoenat** Testoenātum, i n

**theophylline** Theophyllīnum, i n

**thioacetazone** Thioacetazōnum, i n

**thymogen** Thymogĕnum, i n

**tritulating** trituriatio, ōnis f

## U

**up to ad**

**use** usus, us m

## V

**vaginal** vaginālis, e

**valerian** Valeriāna, ae f

**vaseline** Vaselīnum, i n

## W

**water** aqua, ae f

**wheat** Tritĭcum, i n

## Y

**yellow** flavus, a

## Part IV CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY

### Lesson 13

#### INTRODUCTION TO THE LATIN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY. ONE-WORD TERMS AND THEIR MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE. INITIAL AND FINAL MORPHOLOGICAL ELEMENTS USED FOR WORD BUILDING. MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. NAMES OF BRANCHES OF MEDECINE AND MEDICAL SPECIALISTS. NAMES OF MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS

#### § 93. General remarks on the Latin clinical terminology

Clinical names are the most numerous among all medical terms, as these names signify the huge amount of different diseases, pathological conditions and abnormalities, medical examinations and operations. This terminology also includes a great amount of paramedical vocabulary. It is estimated that about 50 % English medical terms is of Greek origin, but this relation is particularly marked in clinical terms.

The word **clinical** itself is of Greek origin (klinike means bed) and it is the acknowledgement of the outstanding role of Greek physicians in both theoretical and practical medicine. Thanks to Greek physicians many diseases got their names and via Latin became part of European medical languages. New clinical names coming into use were built, as a rule, on the base of Greek vocabulary and Greek morphological elements. The grammar form of new clinical terms corresponds to the norms of Latin or other European languages. This historical tradition, in particular, is strictly followed in English. For example:

Latin	English	Meaning
adenītis	adenitis	inflammation of a gland
cardiopathia	cardiopathy	disease of the heart
osteōma	osteoma	tumour made up of bone tissue

It is indisputable, that clinical terms composed on the base of Greek morphological elements have a very important advantage: they are short, but may stand in for a large clinical definition. That's why they are the priority choice of the physicians all over the world, and every one who has a M. D. must know the rules of word building of medical terms and to learn lexical and morphological word building elements.

## § 94. The morphological structure of one-word clinical terms

From the point of view of their morphological structure, one-word clinical terms can be: 1) simple, containing only one stem; 2) compound, consisting of two or more morphological elements.

About 15 % clinical names belong to the first group, e. g. *asthma*, *ātis* n — asthma; *cancer*, *cri* m — cancer; *herpes*, *ētis* m — herpes; *ulcus*, *ēris* n — ulcer. These noun-terms are mostly used in combination with adjectives or nouns: *asthma bronchiale* — bronchial asthma; *ulcus gastris* — ulcer of the stomach.

The majority of one-word clinical terms consist of two or more morphological elements. These elements can be expressed by:

1. Greek affixes (prefixes, suffixes) and roots of nouns or adjectives. In this case, the name can contain:

1.1. A prefix, a root, a suffix and an ending (mostly *-ia*, *-ēma*, *-ismus*, *-ītis*, *-ōma*, *-ōsis*):

**parametrītis**, **īdis** f — parametritis (tissue inflammation near uterus). The name includes: a) the prefix **para-** (near); b) the root **metr-** (uterus); c) the suffix *-ītis* (strictly speaking — combination of suffix **-it-** and ending **-is**) with the constant meaning of “inflammation”;

1.2. A prefix, one or more roots and an ending:

**atrichia**, **ae** f — atrichia (lack of hair). The name includes: a) the prefix **a-** (absence, lack, cessation of a function); b) the root **trich-** (hair); c) the ending *-ia*;

**hypermetropia**, **ae** f — hypermetropia (long-sightedness). The name includes: a) the prefix **hyper-** (excess function); b) the root **-metr-** (dimension); c) the final root **-opia** (sight).

1.3. A root and a suffix (suffixed ending): **chondrōma**, **ātis** n — chondroma (tumour of cartilaginous tissue). The name includes: a) the root **chondr-** (cartilage); b) the suffix *-ōma* with the meaning “tumour” (= tumor).

2. The initial and final word building roots in combination with the term endings **-ia**, **-ēma**, **-ismus**, **-ītis**, **-ōma**, **-ōsis**, **-us**. If the initial word building root hereby ends up with a consonant and the final one begins with a consonant too, these roots are joined via a connecting vowel **-o-**:

**rhinopathia**, **ae** f — rhinopathy (disease of the nose). The name includes: 1) the root **rhin-** (nose); 2) the connecting vowel **-o-**; 3) the root **path-** (disease);

**otorhinolaryngolōgus**, **i** m — otorhinolaryngologist (the doctor for treating ear, nose and larynx diseases). The name includes: a) the root **ot-** (ear); b) the root **rhin-** (nose); c) the root **laryng-** (larynx); d) the final root **-logus** (specialist in a medical region).

If the first root ends with a vowel, the connecting *-o-* is usually omitted:

**pelvimetria**, **ae** f — pelvimetry (measuring of pelvis dimension in women);

**tachycardia**, **ae** f — tachycardia (abnormally fast heart rate).

If the second root begins with a vowel, the connecting **-o-** as a rule is omitted too:

haemat + uria → **haematuria, ae f** — hematuria (blood in the urine);

odont + algia → **odontalgia, ae f** — odontalgia (toothache, feeling of pain in the tooth).

Some exceptions to this rule are nevertheless found: e. g. the roots **broncho-** and **bronchi-** never lose their final vowels: **bronchiectasia, ae f** (= bronchoectasia) — bronchiectasis (expansion of the bronchi); **bronchoadenitis, itidis f** — bronchoadenitis (inflammation of lymphatic glands). The root **bi-** is always used with the connecting **-o-**: biocycle, biology, microbiology, biopharmaceutics.

### § 95. Some notes on the word stressing in clinical names

In the compound nouns with the ending **-ia** the last but one vowel «**i**» is, as a rule, stressed contrary to the rule «vowel before vowel is short»: atrichía, bronchiectasía, haematuría, hypermetropía, odontalgía, rhinopathía. The noun **anatómia** (anatomy) and nouns with the final element **-logia** keep the third syllable from the end stressed: cardiología (cardiology), stomatologia (stomatology).

### § 96. Initial and final root elements

Initial root elements are combined in a one-word term, as you could see above, with the final roots via the connecting vowel **-o-** or with the final suffixes. These roots are presented in the table of each lesson in the following consequence: 1) the Greek root; 2) its Latin equivalent in the dictionary form; 3) English meaning; 4) English clinical word element:

haem-, haemat-

sanguis, ĩnis m

blood, condition of blood

haem-, haemat-

Initial roots can have two or more variants: ger-, geront- (old men or old age); haem-, haemat- (blood). All these variants are to be learnt by heart.

Final root elements are not as numerous as initial ones, but their word building capacity is very high. One should also remember that the final root or suffixed word building element is the first in the making up the literal translation of the term, for example:

The term nephrographia, ae f consists of the initial root **nephr-** (kidney) and the final root **-graphia** (X-ray examination), so the literal translation is “X-ray examination of the kidneys”, nephrography.

The term *myōma*, ātis n consists of the initial root **my-** (muscle) and the final root **-oma** (tumour), so the literal translation is “tumour of muscular tissue”, *myoma*.

Final root elements can be part of an adjective too, e. g.: **-gēnus, a, um** in the **term** *biogēnus*, a, um — biogenic (caused by a vital organism).

The final roots are presented at each lesson in the table like that:

-logus — a specialist in a brunch of science or medicine

-iāter — a doctor, specialist in a brunch of clinical medicine

Some roots may be both initial and final. As final roots they have common endings, mostly the ending **-ia**. For example: **odont-** as the initial root and **-odontia** as the final one: **odontolīthus, i m** — odontolith, calculus on the teeth and **orthodontia, ae f** — orthodontics, the part of dental surgery which is concerned with the prevention and correction of the malocclusion of teeth.

### § 97. The structure and vocabulary of multiword clinical terms

Any multiword term consists, as a rule, of two or three words. The noun containing the cardinal information of the term is placed first, and then one or two nouns or one or two adjectives follow. The second and third nouns indicate the localization of the diseased organ or tissue; adjectives give qualitative and quantitative characteristics of the morbid condition:

**infarctus cerēbri** — cerebral infarct, an infarct of cerebral tissue due to failure of blood supply resulting from vascular thrombosis, embolism or spasm

**neuralgia nervi trigemīni** — trigeminal neuralgia, neuralgic pain located in various portions of the head — in the distributions of one or more of the sensory divisions of the 5<sup>th</sup> cranial nerve

**anaemia haemorrhagīca** — haemorrhagic anaemia, anaemia caused by acute or chronic loss of blood because of whatever cause

**stomatītis aphthōsa chronīca** — chronic aphthous stomatitis, inflammation of the mucous membrane of the mouth, accompanied by small vesicles occurring on the mucous membrane of the cheeks and lips and rupturing to painful ulcers.

The combination of a noun and an adjective after the first noun of the term can be present too:

**Atrophia faciēi progrediens** — progressive facial atrophy, a condition in which there is a progressive wasting of the skin of the face

**Status precancerōsus cutis faciēi** — precancerous state of the face skin

To sum up, we can say that multiword clinical terms are built similar to anatomical ones. First of all, the dictionary form of every word should be given. After that, the term is built according to the already known rules.

## § 98. The names of the common branches of clinical medicine

The names of common branches of clinical medicine are usually formed by means of the final root element **-logia** and the appropriate initial one, which determines the cardinal sense of the term. It should be mentioned that the most numerous names of medico-biological sciences are built according to this rule:

ophthalm- (eye) + logia → ophthalmologia, ae f — ophthalmology, branch of clinical medicine treating eye diseases;

proct- (rectum) + logia → proctologia, ae f — proctology, branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases. Compare also:

immunologia, ae f — immunology, science about immunity;

pharmacologia, ae f — pharmacology, science about drugs and their usage;

physiologia, ae f — physiology, science about normal vital processes in human organism.

Names of some branches of clinical medicine are built by adding the root **-patho-** (disease) and the final root **-logia** to the initial root:

neur- (nerve) + **-patho-** + logia → neuropathologia, ae f — neuropathology, clinical neurology, branch of clinical medicine meant for treating nerve diseases;

sex- (sex) + **-patho-** + logia → sexopathologia, ae f — sexopathology, branch of medicine meant to heal sexual disorders.

Some names of medical branches are formed by means of the final root element **-iatria**, which means some definite branches of clinical medicine:

geriatria, ae f — geriatrics, particular branch of medicine treating diseases of older age;

paediatria, ae f — pediatrics, branch of medicine treating children's diseases;

phoniatria, ae f — phoniatics, branch of medicine treating disorders of voice formation;

phthisiatria, ae f — phthisiology, branch of medicine treating tuberculosis;

psychiatria, ae f — psychiatrics (psychiatry), branch of medicine treating mental diseases.

## § 99. Names of medical specialists

Most medical specialist's names are composed of the final root element **-logus** and the appropriate initial root element which determines the cardinal sense of the term. In this way names of most biological and medical specialist are formed:

anthropolōgus, i m — anthropologist, a specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution;

stomatolōgus, i m — stomatologist, a specialist studying forms of life and vital organisms;

diaetolōgus, i m — dietarian, a doctor-specialist in the dietary nutrition;  
haematolōgus, i m — hematologist, a doctor-specialist in blood diseases.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the ending **-pathologia**, then the name of specialist has the ending **-patholōgus**:

neuropathologia → neuropatholōgus, i m — neuropathologist, a doctor-specialist in nerve diseases;

sexopathologia → sexopatholōgus, i m — sexopathologist, a doctor-specialist treating sexual disorders.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the ending **-iatria**, then the name of specialist has the ending **-iāter**:

paediatrica → paediāter, tri m — pediatrician (= pediatricist), a doctor-specialist in children's diseases.

Finally, many Latin names of medical specialists are built by means of the suffix **-ista** and the initial root element:

oculista, ae m — oculist, a doctor-specialist treating eye diseases;

therapeutista, ae m — physician, therapist, a doctor-specialist treating inner organs.

### § 100. Some notes on the names of medical specialists in Latin and English

Names of medical specialists in Latin don't fully coincide with the English equivalents, as seen above. The difference lies not only on the morphological level (phtisiāter, tri m — phtisiologist), — sometimes, the lexical units don't correspond each other. For example, the name otorhinolaryngologist is not quite common for English or American medical use; — instead three separate terms are used: otologist, rhinologist and laryngologist. But, the term otolaryngologist exists too. That's why it's more convenient to use this slightly artificial, but formally correct term otorhinolaryngologist, than to bring three English terms as equivalents. And otherwise, we tend to keep the terms presented both in modern English and Latin medical dictionaries.

### § 101. The names of medical examinations and methods of treatment

The names of medical examinations are usually formed by means of the final root elements **-graphia**, **-metria**, **-scopia**, **-diagnostica**:

cystographia, ae f — cystography, X-ray examination of the urinary bladder;

craniometria, ae f — craniometry, measuring of skull;

proctoscopia, ae f — proctoscopy, internal examination of the rectum;

thermodiagnostica, ae f — thermodiagnosics, a diagnosis via registration of infrared radiation.

Names which signify methods of medical treatment usually contain the final root element **-therapia** and the initial root element pointing at the method of the treatment:

phytotherapia, ae f — phytotherapy, treatment by means of medicinal herbs.

Results of X-ray, electric or other methods of medical examination are expressed by the final root **-gramma**:

haemogramma, ātis n — hemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood;

rhinogramma, ātis n — rhinogram, X-ray photograph of nose

### § 102. Table of initial root elements

Greek initial roots and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
anthrop-	homo, ĩnis m	man, human	anthrop-
bi-	vita, ae f	life	bi-
cardi-	cor, cordis n	heart	cardi-
gloss-	lingua, ae f	tongue	gloss-
gynaec-	femĭna, ae f	wife	gynaec-
haem-, haemat-	sanguis, ĩnis m	blood	hem-, hemat-
neur-	nervus, i m	hand	neur-
odont-	dens, dentis m	tooth	odont
ophthalm-	ocŭlus, i m	eye	ophthalm-
ot-	auris, is f	ear	ot-
paed-	infans, ntis m, f	child	ped-
path-	morbus, i m	disease	path-
pharmac-	medicamentum, i n	drug	pharmac-
phthisi-	tuberculosis, is f	tuberculosis	phthisi-
physi-	natŭra, ae f	nature	physi-
phyt-	planta, ae f	plant	phyt-
proct-	rectum, i n	rectum	proct-
psych-	anĭmus, i m	psyche	psych-
rhin-	nasus, i m	nose	rhin-
stom-, stomat-	os, oris n	mouth	stom-, stomat-

### § 103. Table of final root elements

Final root elements	English meaning
<b>-diagnostĭca</b>	examination of functional state of organs in order to reveal some disorders
<b>-gĕnus, a, um</b>	caused by any factor
<b>-graphia</b>	1) X-ray examination; 2) examination by means of electricity; 3) recording of the result of some examination

Final root elements	English meaning
<b>-gramma</b>	result of some medical examination seen on a film or presented graphically
<b>-iater</b>	medical specialist treating certain inner diseases
<b>-iatria</b>	any definite branch of clinical medicine
<b>-logia</b>	name of some science or branch of clinical medicine
<b>-logus</b>	name of medical or biological specialists
<b>-metria</b>	measurement of physical characteristics of human body
<b>-odontia</b>	tooth or state of teeth
<b>-scopia</b>	visual or instrumental visual examination
<b>-therapia</b>	method of treatment

So, your task is to memorize the word building elements of this and the following lessons and combine these elements in terms. If you are not quite sure of your version of translation, consult the dictionary.

#### § 104. Exercises

**1. Determine orally the full dictionary form of each term and the meaning of the initial and final roots and write down the full definition of each term:**

anthropologia; anthropogĕnus; biolŏgia; cardiolŏgus; cardiogĕnus; gynaecolŏgus; haematologia; iatrogĕnus; neuropatholŏgus; ophthalmoscopia; odontogĕnus; otorhinolaryngologia; physiologia; phthisiāter; phytotherapia; proctolŏgus; psychiatria; rhinogramma; stomatoscopia

**2. Make up in the Latin dictionary form the one-word terms with the following meaning:**

branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases; branch of medicine treating diseases of children; medical specialist treating blood diseases; medical specialist treating inner organs; results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood; science studying drugs and their usage; treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors; specialist studying forms of life and living organisms; specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution; treatment by means of medical herbs; the X-ray examination of tooth

**3. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition in English of the terms:**

anthropologist; biopharmaceutics; cardiogram; cardiography; gerontology; hematology; hemogram; iatrogenic; odontogram; neurogenic; ophthalmoscopy; otogenic; otorhinolaryngologist; pediatrician; pharmacotherapy; phthisiologist; phytotherapy; proctodiagnostics; proctoscopy; psychiatrist; psychogenic; psychologist; rhinoscopy; stomatology; stomatologist; therapist; thoracometry

**4. Give the Latin dictionary form and translate into English (A) and into Latin (B):**

A. Caries dentium incisivōrum; curatio cariēi profundae; extractio dentis; foetor ex ore; fractura mandibūlae; mobilitas dentium premolarium; herpes simplex; morbi allergīci; tuberculōsis laryngis;

B. Comatose state; denudation of the tooth cervix; devitalized teeth; diseases of the pulp; plicated tongue; rupture of nasal septum; short frenulum of upper lip; trauma of masticatory muscles; viral and bacterial infections

**§ 105. Vocabulary to lesson 13**

*I. Latin-English vocabulary*

allergīcus, a, um — allergic

anthropologia, ae f — anthropology, science studying the man in the process of his evolution

anthropolōgus, i m — anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution

biologia, ae f — biology, science studying forms of life and vital organisms

cancer, cri m — cancer

cardiogēnus, a, um — cardiogenic, happening because of the heart

cardiolōgus, i m — cardiologist, medical specialist treating heart diseases

caries, ēi f — caries, a gradual decay or death of bone as a result of chronic infection

curatio, ōnis f — medical treatment

dentinogēnesis, is f — dentinogenesis, the formation and development of the dentine by the odontoblasts

extractio, ōnis f — extraction

foetor, ōris m — a foul odor or stench, fetor

fractūra, ae f — fracture

geriāter, tri m — geriatrician, medical specialist treating diseases of the aged

gynaecolōgus, i m — gynecologist, medical specialist treating genital diseases in women

haematologia, ae f — hematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases

herpes, ētis m — inflammation of the skin or mucous membrane, with clusters of deep-seated vesicles, herpes

iatrogēnus, a, um — iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks

imperfectus, a, um — incopete

incisīvus, a, um (dens) — incisor tooth

larynx, yngis m — larynx  
 lingua, ae f — tongue  
 luxatio, ōnis f — luxation, dislocation  
 mandibŭla, ae f — mandible  
 mobilitas, ātis f — mobility  
 morbus, i m — disease  
 mucōsus, a, um — mucous  
 neuropatholōgus, i m — neuropathologist, specialist treating diseases of the nervous system  
 odontogramma, ātis n — odontogram, X-ray film of the tooth  
 odontoscopia, ae f — odontology, instrumental-visual examination of the tooth  
 ophthalmoscopia, ae f — ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye  
 os, oris n — mouth  
 otorhinolaryngologia, ae f — otorhinolaryngology, branch of medicine treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx  
 physiologia, ae f — physiology, science studying normal vital processes in human body  
 phtisiāter, tri m — phtisiologist, specialist treating tuberculosis  
 phytotherapia, ae f — phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medicinal herb  
 plicātus, a, um — plicate, folded  
 premolāris, e — premolar  
 proctolōgus, i m — proctologist, specialist treating diseases of rectum  
 profundus, a, um — deep  
 psychiatria, ae f — psychiatry, branch of medicine treating mental diseases  
 rhinogramma, ātis n — rhinogram, X-ray film of the nose  
 stomatoscopia, ae f — stomatoscopy, visual examination of the oral cavity  
 tuberculōsis, is f — tuberculosis  
 tunīca, ae f — membrane  
 zoster, ēris m — zoster, zona, shingles

## II. *English-Latin vocabulary*

amputation — amputatio, ōnis f  
 anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution — anthropolōgus, i m  
 bacterial — bacteriālis, e  
 biopharmaceutics, study of physical and chemical properties of medicinal substances — biopharmaceutīca, ae f  
 branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases — proctologia, ae f

branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of children — paediatría, ae f  
 cardiogram: 1) result of X-ray examination of the heart; 2) graphical picture of heart action — cardiogramma, ātis n  
 cardiography: 1) X-ray examination of the heart; 2) graphical recording of heart action — cardiographia, ae f  
 cervix — cervix, īcis f  
 comatose, affected with coma — comatōsus, a, um  
 denudation, the state of being deprived of a protecting layer or covering — denudatio, ōnis f  
 devitalized, deprived of life or vitalizing properties — devitalisātus, a, um  
 diagnosis via examination of iris, iridodiagnostics — iridodiagnostīca, ae f  
 fracture — fractūra, ae f  
 frenulum — frenūlum, i n  
 glossotomy, dissection of the tongue — glossotomia, ae f  
 hemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood — haemogramma, ātis n  
 iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks — iatrogēnus, a, um  
 infection — infectio, ōnis f  
 iridodiagnostics, diagnosis via examination of iris — iridodiagnostīca, ae f  
 lip — labium, i n  
 luxation, dislocation — luxatio, ōnis f  
 masticatory — masticatorius, a, um  
 measurement of pelvis in women, pelvimetry — pelvimetria, ae f  
 medical specialist treating blood diseases, hematologist — haematolōgus, i m  
 nasal — nasālis, e  
 neurogenic, happening because of the nervous system disorders — neurogēnus, a, um  
 ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye — ophthalmosopia, ae f  
 otogenic, happening because of the ear — otogēnus, a, um  
 otorhinolaryngologist, specialist treating ear, nose and larynx diseases — otothinolaryngolōgus, i m  
 pediatrician, specialist treating children's diseases — paedīāter, tri m  
 pharmacotherapy, the treatment of disease with drugs — pharmacotherapia, ae f  
 phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medical herbs — phytotherapia, ae f  
 plicated — plicātus, a, um  
 proctodiagnostics, examination of the functional state of the rectum — proctodiagnostica, ae f

proctoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the rectum —  
 proctoscopia, ae f  
 psychiatrist, specialist treating mental diseases — psychiāter, tri m  
 phthisiologist, specialist treating tuberculosis — phthisiāter, tri m  
 pulp — pulpa, ae f  
 results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood, hemogram —  
 haemogramma, ātis n  
 rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the nose — rhinoscopia, ae f  
 rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or  
 an other structure — ruptūra, ae f  
 science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacology — pharmacologia,  
 ae f  
 septum — septum, i n  
 short — brevis, e  
 somatology, branch of anthropology, studying structure of human body —  
 somatologia, ae f  
 specialist studying forms of life and living organisms, biologist —  
 biolōgus, i m  
 specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution, anthropologist —  
 anthropolōgus, i m  
 specialist treating diseases of inner organs, therapist (therapist) —  
 therapeutista, ae m  
 state — status, us m  
 stomatology, branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of the oral  
 cavity — stomatologia, ae f  
 therapist, specialist treating diseases of inner organs — therapeutista, ae m  
 thoracometry, measurement of the size of the thorax — thoracometria, ae f  
 tongue — lingua, ae f  
 tonsillectomy, the surgical operation for removal of a tonsil —  
 tonsillectomia, ae f  
 trauma, injury — trauma, ātis n  
 treatment by means of medicinal plants, phytotherapy — phytotherapia, ae f  
 treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors, physiotherapy —  
 physiotherapia, ae f  
 tuberculosis, the disease caused by infection with the Mycobacterium  
 tuberculosis — tuberculōsis, is f  
 viral — virālis, e  
 the X-ray examination of mamma, mammography — mammographia, ae f

**Lesson 14**  
**NAMES OF FUNCTION DISORDERS, PATHOLOGICAL PROCESSES**  
**AND ABNORMAL CONDITIONS**

**§ 106. Composition of one-word names of functional disorders**

Usually, one-word names of functional disorders are composed of Greek prefixes and roots. There are the following prefixes:

1. The prefix **a-** (before a consonant) or **an-** (before a vowel). This prefix signifies cessation or loss of a function as well as lack of property:

**adentia, ae f** — lack of teeth, adentia;

**anuria, ae f** — complete cessation of the secretion and excretion of urine, anuria;

**aphagia, ae f** — a condition in which the ability of swallowing is lacking, aphagia;

In the same way the Latin prefix **in-** (**im-** before consonants **b** or **m**) combined with Latin roots is used both in nouns and adjectives:

**incontinentia, ae f** — lack of voluntary control over the discharge of faeces or urine, incontinence;

**insufficiētia, ae f** — state of being inadequate to perform normal functions, insufficiency;

**immobilitas, ātis f** — lack of mobility, immobility;

**insensibilis, e** — lack of sensibility or intelligence, insensible.

2. The prefix **dys-** signifies functional disorders:

**dysgeusia, ae f** — impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia;

**dysthyreōsis, is f** — imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreōsis;

**dysuria, ae f** — condition in which the passage of urine is difficult, dysuria.

3. The prefix **en-** (**em-** before consonants **b, m, p**) indicates the inner location of any morbid condition:

**empyēma, ātis n** — accumulation of pus in a cavity;

**enophthalmus, i m** — recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit

As prefixed elements some Greek adjectives, pronouns and numerals are used:

Prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English translation
<b>auto-</b>	self-, resulting of one's own action	autopepsia, ae f (autolŷsis, is f)	the process of spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia (autolysis)
<b>mono-</b>	one (part)	monoplegia, ae f	a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscle or one part of

Prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English translation
			the body is affected, monoplegia
<b>di-</b>	two (parts)	diplegia, ae f	paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia
<b>hemi-</b>	half	hemialgia, ae f	neuralgic pain affecting the right or the left side of the body or the right or the left side of any part of the body, hemialgia

### § 107. Composition of one-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions

The majority of one-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions are composed of Greek roots, suffixes and endings which are adapted to Latin grammar system. One group of terms consists of a root, a suffix and an ending. Two suffixes of this group compose a morphological unity with their endings:

Latin suffix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent	Full English explanation
<b>-ismus</b> (suffix <b>-ism-</b> + <b>-us</b> , ending of the 2 <sup>nd</sup> declension)	abnormality or pathological process, the meaning of which is determined by the root element	botulismus, i m	botulism	a form of food poisoning due to the botulinum toxin
<b>-ōsis</b> (suffix <b>-os-</b> + <b>-is</b> , ending of the 3 <sup>rd</sup> declension)	pathological condition or process	dermatōsis, is f	dermatōsis	any skin disease

**Attention!** The final suffix **-ōsis** may be used as the morphological part of a noun term not denoting a disease:

diagnōsis, is f — diagnosis, the scientific recognition of the disease from which a person suffers;

sympiōsis, is f — symbiosis, the intimate association of two organisms.

The next two suffixes are considered as final suffixed elements of the nouns of the 3<sup>rd</sup> declension:

Latin suffix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent	Full English explanation
<b>-ēma</b>	different pathological conditions	enanthēma, ātis n	enanthema	the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue
<b>-iāsis</b>	different pathological conditions	psoriāsis, is f	psoriasis	a chronic disease of the skin characterized by the appearance of laminated scales

But the majority of terms composed of morphological elements present with initial and final roots. First of all, the root **path-** combined with the ending **-ia** is used:

**arthropathia, ae f** — any disease affecting a joint, athropathy;

**nephropathia, ae f** — a disease of the kidney, nephropathy;

**rhinopathia, ae f** — any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy.

Other roots are also used as final elements which define more precisely the character of pathological condition, e. g.:

**angiorrhagia, ae f** — a hemorrhage from a vessel, angiorrhagia;

**arthralgia, ae f** — any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia;

**cancerophobia, ae f** — unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma, cancerophobia (= carcinomatophobia).

Nevertheless, about 20 % of one-word terms signifying pathological processes and abnormal conditions are nouns comprised of one root:

**coma, ātis n** — the state of complete loss of consciousness with a disorder of vitally important functions, coma;

**infarctus, us m** — an area of dead tissue produced by the obstruction of an end artery, infarction;

**insultus, us m** — cerebral thrombosis, stroke;

**sepsis, is f** — infection with pyogenic microorganisms, sepsis

Sometimes, to correct or improve some abnormal condition of the organism, one must use an operative interference. The names of such operative interferences are composed with the help of an initial Greek root signifying the object of this interference and final root elements **-tomia** (operative cutting) or **-ectomy** (amputation or excision of an organ or its part), for example:

**osteotomia, ae f** — the operation of cutting through a bone, osteotomy

**tonsillectomia, ae f** — surgical excision of a tonsil, tonsillectomy

Surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach etc. is named resection, **ōnis f** (resection), for example:

**Resectio gingivae** — gum resection, resection of the gingiva.

The full removal of an organ or an anatomical structure is named amputatio, **ōnis f** (amputation), for example:

**amputatio radice dentis** — amputation of teeth root

## § 108. Initial Greek roots and their Latin equivalents

Initial Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
<b>angi-</b>	vas, vasis n	vessel	angi-
<b>arthr-</b>	articulatio, ōnis f	joint	arthr-
<b>brady-</b>	lentus, a, um	slow	brady-
<b>cephal-, cephalia</b>	caput, ĩtis n	head	cephal-, cephal-

Initial Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
<b>chondr-</b>	cartilāgo, ĩnis f	cartilage	chondr-
<b>dactyl-, -dactylia</b>	digĭtus, i m	finger or toe	dactyl-
<b>derm-, dermat-, -dermia</b>	cutis, is f	skin	derm-, dermat-, -dermia
<b>encephal-</b>	cerĕbrum, i n	brain	encephal-
<b>my-</b>	muscŭlus, i m	muscle	my-
<b>nephr-</b>	ren, renis m	kidney	nephr-
<b>oste-</b>	os, ossis n	bone	oste-
<b>phon-, -phonia</b>	vox, vocis f	voice	phon-, -phonia
<b>phot-</b>	lux, lucis f	light	phot-
<b>phleb-</b>	vena, ae f	vein	phleb-
<b>pseud-</b>	falsus, a, um	false	pseud-
<b>spasm-, -spasmus</b>	spasmus, i m	spasm	spasm-, -spasm
<b>tox-, toxic-</b>	venĕnum, i n	poison	tox-, toxic-
<b>tachy-</b>	celer, ěris, ěre	fast, quick	tachy-
<b>trich-, -trichia</b>	capillus, i m; pilus, i m	hair	trich-
<b>xer-</b>	siccus, a, um	dry	xer-

### § 109. Table of final root elements

Final root elements	English meaning
<b>-algia</b>	pain in any part of the body
<b>-ectomia</b>	amputation or excision of an organ or its part
<b>-geusia</b>	different pathological conditions of taste
<b>-kinesia</b>	different pathological conditions of voluntary motion
<b>-mania</b>	any form of mental disorder accompanied by some degree of excitation
<b>-mycōsis</b>	a morbid condition caused by a pathogenic fungus
<b>-opia, -opsia</b>	any condition of vision
<b>-pathia</b>	a general name of a disease of any organ due to various causes
<b>-pepsia</b>	any condition of digestion
<b>-phagia</b>	any pathological condition in the act of swallowing
<b>-philia</b>	predisposition to any morbid condition
<b>-phobia</b>	a pathological fear
<b>-plegia</b>	paralysis (palsy) of the muscles of any organ
<b>-pnoĕ</b>	a pathological condition of breathing
<b>-tomia</b>	operative cutting
<b>-trophia</b>	nutrition

## § 110. Exercises

**1. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term and its English equivalent:**

angiopathia; autohaemotherapia; bradyphagia; bradypnoë; chondropathia; dactylospasmus; dermatōsis; dermatomycōsis; dysgeusia; encephalogramma; gastrospasmus; hemicrania; hemiplegia; monodactylismus; myoplegia; myotomia; osteopathia; phlebocarcinōma; phlebotomia; photophobia; pseudoanodontia; pseudoarthrōsis; spasmophilia; stomatomycōsis; tachycardia; toxicomania; xerophthalmia

**2. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:**

abnormal quickness in eating; a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales; a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking; any disease affecting a joint; any disease of the skin; any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair; any morbid condition of the nose; a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscle or one part of the body is affected; an impairment of the voice; kind of pain affecting a joint; paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body; the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue; the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart; unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma

**3. Give the full definition in English and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:**

angiology; apnoea; arthralgia; atrichia; atrophy; bradycardia; cephalalgia; didactylism; dystrophy; glossotomy; hemiatrophy; hemophilia; mastopathy; nephrogenic, nephropathy, ophthalmoplegia, osteochondrosis; osteodystrophy; osteotomy; pharmacophobia; phoniatics; phlebography; phonocardiogram; photophobia; proctospasm; rhinopathy; tachyphagia; tonsillectomy; toxicosis; xerostomia

**4. Give the dictionary form and translate into English (A) and into Latin (B):**

A. Atrophia papillārum linguae; cysta dentālis radiculāris; defectus cuneiformis dentium; dysplasia enamēli; exacerbatio parodontōsis chronīcae; fistūla suppuratīva buccae; resectio mandibūlae; ulcus linguae.

B. Actinomycōsis of salivary glands; amputation of teeth root; diabetic coma; hyperesthesia of the hard teeth tissues; insufficiency of the cardiac valves; prophylaxis of malignant tumors; protrusive occlusion

## § 111. Vocabulary to lesson 14

### I. Latin-English vocabulary

allergicus, a, um — caused by or affected with allergy, allergic

angiopathia, ae f — any disease of blood vessels, angiopathy

arthromalacia, ae f — softening of joints, arthromalacia

atrophia, ae f — a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause, atrophy

autohaemotherapia, ae f — a method of treatment in which the patient's own blood is administered to him, autohaemotherapy

bradyphagia, ae f — slowing of swallowing, bradyphagia

bradypnoë, ës f — an abnormally slow rare of breathing, bradypnea

bucca, ae f — cheek

cariōsus, a, um — affected with caries, carious

chondropathia, ae f — any disease affecting a cartilage, chondropathy

chronicus, a, um — long continued, chronic

cuneiformis, e — cuneiform

cysta, ae f — a cavity lined by an inflamed or neoplastic tissue, cyst

dactylospasmus, i m — spasmodic contraction of a finger or toe, dactylospasm

defectus, us m — a defect

dentālis, e — dental

dermatōsis, ae f — any disease of the skin, dermatosis

dermatomycōsis, ae f — a generic term for all cutaneous infections due to fungi

dysgeusia, ae f — impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia

dysplasia, ae f — abnormal development of tissue, dysplasia

enamēlum, i n — enamel

encephalogramma, ātis n — any X-ray film obtained in the radiological examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space of the brain, encephalogram

exacerbatio, ōnis f — increase in severity of a disease, exacerbation

fistūla, ae f — an unnatural communication between an organ and the body surface, fistula

gastrospasmus, i m — an involuntary contraction of the stomach muscle, gastrospasm

hemicrania, ae f — a periodic morbid condition with localized headaches, hemicrania

hemiplegia, ae f — paralysis of one side of the body, hemiplegia

monodactylismus, i m — a congenital condition in which only one finger or toe is present on the hand or the foot, monodactylism

morbus, i m — disease  
 myoplegia, ae f — paralysis of muscle or a condition in which muscular force is decreased, myoplegia  
 myotomia, ae f — the dissection of a muscle or of muscular tissue, myotomy  
 osteomalacia, ae f — softening of bones, osteomalacia  
 osteopathia, ae f — disease of bones, osteopathia  
 papilla, ae f — papilla  
 parodontōsis, is f (= periodontōsis, is f) — any degenerative change occurring in alveolar periosteum  
 phlebocarcinōma, ātis n — a malignant epithelial tumour affecting a vein, phlebocarcinoma  
 photophobia, ae f — abnormal intolerance to light, photophobia  
 pseudarthrōsis, is f — a false joint formed between the fragments of a fractured bone which have failed to unite, pseudarthrosis  
 radicularis, e — radicular  
 resectio, ōnis f — resection, surgical removal of a part  
 spasmophilia, ae f — a morbid state in which there is a tendency to convulsions and a spasm, spasmophilia  
 stomatycōsis, is f — any morbid condition caused by a microscopical fungus, stomatycosis  
 suppuratīvus, a, um — pus-forming; having a tendency toward suppuration, suppurative  
 tachycardia, ae f — a rapid action of the heart, tachycardia  
 toxicomania, ae f — an insane desire for poison, toxicomania  
 ulcus, ěris n — a localized necrotic lesion of the skin or a mucous surface, an ulcer

## II. *English-Latin vocabulary*

abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia — tachyphagia, ae f  
 a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales, psoriasis — psoriasis, is f  
 a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking, aphagia — aphagia, ae f  
 actinomycosis, a chronic infective disease transmitted from cattle — actinomycōsis, is f  
 acute — acūtus, a, um  
 amputation, the removal of a limb or portion of a limb, or of any other appendage — amputatio, ōnis f  
 angiology, the science of blood vessels — angiologia, ae f  
 any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy — arthropathia, ae f  
 any disease of the skin, dermatosis — dermatōsis, is f

any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia — arthralgia, ae f  
 any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy — rhinopathia, ae f  
 any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair, trichopathy —  
 trichopathia, ae f  
 apnea, the cessation of breathing — apnoë, ës f  
 arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting a joint — arthralgia, ae f  
 atrichia, not having hair — atrichia, ae f  
 atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause —  
 atrophia, ae f  
 biopsy, examination for purposes of diagnosis of issue cut from the living  
 body — biopsia, ae f  
 bradycardia, slowing of the heart rate — bradycardia, ae f  
 cardiac — cardiăcus, a, um  
 cephalalgia, pain in the head — cephalalgia, ae f  
 coma, the state of complete loss of consciousness from which the patient  
 can not be roused by any ordinary external stimulus — coma, ätis n  
 diabetic, relating to diabetes — diabetĭcus, a, um  
 didactylism, the congenital condition of having only two fingers on a hand  
 or two toes on a foot — didactylismus, i m  
 dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue — dysplasia, ae f  
 dystrophy, a disorder of the structure and functions of an organ or tissue  
 due to perverted nutrition — dystrophia, ae f  
 encephalomalacia, softening of the brain — encephalomalacia, ae f  
 fibrous — fibrōsus, a, um  
 gland — glandŭla, ae f  
 hard — durus, a, um  
 hemiatrophy, atrophy affecting only one side of the body, or one half of  
 an organ — hemiatrophia, ae f  
 hemophilia, a severe hereditary bleeding disease affecting males and  
 transmitted by females — haemophilia, ae f  
 impairment of the voice, dysphonia — dysphonia, ae f  
 infection — infectio, ōnis f  
 insufficiency — insufficientia, ae f  
 intravenous — intravenōsus, a, um  
 lingual — linguālis, e  
 malignant (neoplasm), indicative of danger to ill — malignus, a, um  
 mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland — mastopathia,  
 ae f  
 medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs — therapeutista, ae m  
 monopathophobia, fear of a particular disease — monopathophobia, ae f  
 monostotic, pertaining to a singular bone — monostotĭcus, a, um  
 myopia, short sight — myopia, ae f

narcosis — narcōsis, is f  
nephrogenic, produced by or originating in the kidney — nephrogēnus, a um  
nephropathy, disease of the kidney — nephropathia, ae f  
occlusion, the contact between upper and lower teeth on the closure of  
the jaws or during normal movement of the mandible — oclusio, ōnis f  
ophthalmoplegia, palsy (paralysis) of ocular muscles — ophthalmoplegia,  
ae f  
osteochondrosis, a degenerative change in bony and cartilage tissues —  
osteochondrosis, is f  
osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone nutrition — osteodystrophia, ae f  
paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia — diplegia, ae f  
a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscle or  
one part of the body is affected, monoplegia — monoplegia, ae f  
pharmacophobia, a morbid fear of taking drugs or medicines —  
pharmacophobia, ae f  
phoniatics (= phoniatriy), the treatment of disorders of speech —  
phoniatria, ae f  
phlebography 1) a radiographic visualization of veins; 2) the tracing of  
the venous pulse by means of a phlebograph — phlebographia, ae f  
phonocardiogram, the record produced by an instrument for recording heart  
sounds — phonocardiogramma, ātis n  
photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light — photophobia, ae f  
proctospasm, a spasmodic contraction of the rectum — proctospasmus, i m  
progressive — progressīvus, a, um  
prophylaxis, the art of preventing disease — prophylaxis, is f  
protrusive, removed ahead — protrusīvus, a, um  
the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue, enanthema — enanthēma, ātis n  
rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose — rhinopathia, ae f  
salivary — salivarius, a, um  
tachyphagia, abnormal quickness in eating — tachyphagia, ae f  
tissue — textus, us m  
toxicosis, a pathological condition caused by the absorption of poisons —  
toxicōsis, is f  
tumor — tumor, ōris m  
unfounded or unreasonable fear of a predisposition to carcinoma —  
cancerophobia, ae f  
valve — valva, ae f  
viral — virālis, e  
xerostomia, dryness of the mouth due to failure of the salivary gland —  
xerostomia, ae f  
the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart,  
angiocardiology — angiocardiology, ae f

## Lesson 15

### NAMES OF QUALITATIVE AND QUANTITATIVE ABNORMALITIES IN MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURES AND PHYSIOLOGICAL PROCESSES

#### § 112. Increase and decrease in different quantitative conditions

Increase and decrease of different quantitative conditions may, as a rule, be expressed by means of the prefixes **hyper-** and **hypo-** which are joined by final root elements:

**hyperaesthesia, ae f** — excessive sensitiveness of the skin, hyperaesthesia;

**hyperkinesia, ae f** — a condition in which there is abnormally great strength of movement, hyperkinesias;

**hyperplasia, ae f** — any condition in which there is an increase in the number of cells in any body's part, hyperplasia;

**hypodynamia, ae f** — diminished muscular or nervous energy, hypodynamia;

**hypogalactia, ae f** — the secretion of a too small quantity of milk, hypogalactia;

**hypopepsia, ae f** — abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia.

Increase and decrease in the functional activity is sometimes expressed by means of the initial roots **tachy-** and **brady-**:

**tachypnoë, ës f** — abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnoea

**bradykinesia, ae f** — abnormal sluggishness of physical movements, bradykinesia

#### § 113. Increase or decrease in dimension of anatomical and histological structures

Increase in size is expressed by means of the following initial and final roots: **dolich-**, **macr-**, **mega-**, **megal-**, **-megalia**:

**dolichocōlon, i n** — an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon

**macrocytus, i m** — a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte

**megaduodēnum, i n** — duodenum of abnormally large size, megadoduenum

**megalosplenja, ae f** — enlargement of the spleen, megalosplenja

**hepatomegalia, ae f** — a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia

Decrease in size of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the initial roots **brachy-** and **micr-**:

**brachydactylia** **ae f** — a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia

**microcephālus**, **i m** — a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus.

Dilatation or narrowing in volume of a hollow organ, cavity or tube is expressed by means of the following roots: **-ectasia**, **-ectāsis**, **-dilatatio**, **sten-**, **-stenōsis**:

**bronchiectāsis**, **is f** — a condition of dilatation of a bronchus or bronchi, bronchiectasis

**gastrectasia**, **ae f** — dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia

**vasodilatatio**, **ōnis f** — dilatation of a blood vessel, vasodilatation

**stenostomia**, **ae f** — abnormal narrowness of the mouth, stenostomy

**oesophagostenōsis**, **is f** — narrowing of the oesophagus, oesophagostenosis

#### § 114. Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures

Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the roots **olig-**, **poly-**, **-penia**:

**oligodontia** (=oligodentia), **ae f** — a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia

**polyarthropathia**, **ae f** — a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy

**erythropenia**, **ae f** — a state in which there are too few erythrocytes in the blood, erythropenia

Increase in the quantity of any anatomical or histological structure may also be expressed by the final prefix **-ōsis**:

**leucocytōsis**, **is f** — an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytosis

**papillomatōsis**, **is f** — the condition of diffuse formation of papillomata, papillomatosis

#### § 115. Table of initial root elements

Greek root and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word-building equivalents
<b>aesthes-</b> , <b>-aesthesia</b>	sensus, us m	sensibility, sensitiveness	aesthes-, -aesthesia
<b>brachy-</b>	brevis, e	short	brachy-
<b>cheil-</b> , <b>-cheilia</b>	labium, i n	lip	cheil-, -cheilia
<b>cyt-</b> , <b>-cȳtus</b>	cellŭla, ae f	cell	cyt-, -cyte
<b>dolich-</b>	longus, a, um	long	dolich-

Greek root and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word-building equivalents
<b>erythr-</b>	ruber, bra, brum	red	erythr-
<b>gen-, -genia</b>	maxilla, ae f	mandible	gen-, -genia
<b>gloss-, -glossia</b>	lingua, ae f	tongue	gloss-, -glossia
<b>glyc-</b>	dulcis, e	sugar	glyc-
<b>gnath-, -gnathia</b>	maxilla, ae f	maxilla, upper jaw	gnath-, -gnathia
<b>leuc-</b>	albus, a, um	white	leuc-
<b>macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalialia</b>	magnus, a, um	large	macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalialia
<b>melan-</b>	niger, gram, grum	black	melan-
<b>micr-</b>	parvus, a, um	small	micr-
<b>myel, -myelia</b>	1) medulla ossium; 2) medulla spinālis	1) bone marrow; 2) spinal cord	myel, -myelia
<b>olig-</b>	parvus, a, um	few	olig-
<b>pod-, -podia</b>	pes, pedis m	foot	pod-, -podia
<b>poly-</b>	multus, a, um	many	poly-
<b>splen-, -splenia</b>	lien, ēnis m	spleen	splen-, -splenia
<b>therm-, -thermia</b>	1) calor, ōris m; 2) temperaturā, ae f	1) heat; 2) temperature	therm-, -thermia
<b>thyr(e)-</b>	glandūla thyr(e)oidea	thyroid (gland)	thyro-

### Attention!

1. The initial roots **macr-** and **megal-** may be used in many (but not in all!) cases as synonyms: macrocephalia = megalcephalia, macropodia = megalopodia. When choosing the necessary variant of the initial root one should consult the dictionary.

2. The root **-cyt-** can be omitted if the term begins with **erythrocyt-** or **leucocy-** and ends with **-penia**:

erythrocytopenia = erythropenia; leucocytopenia = leucopenia, but: monocytopenia, thrombocytopenia – the only variants.

### § 116. Table of final roots

Final root elements	English meaning
<b>-aemia</b>	any condition of the blood
<b>-genēsis</b>	the origin and (formative) development
<b>-genia</b>	any condition of mandible
<b>-mnesia</b>	any condition of the memory
<b>-penia</b>	a diminution in the number of any kind of cells present in the blood
<b>-phrenia</b>	a condition associated with a serious mental disorder
<b>-plasia</b>	the development of tissues

Final root elements	English meaning
<b>-poësis</b>	the formation: 1) of cells present in the blood; 2) of lymph; 3) of urine
<b>-sthenia</b>	any condition of strength, vigor or forcefulness
<b>-tensio</b>	a condition of arterial blood pressure
<b>-tonia</b>	a condition of muscular tension in the walls of vessels and bowels

### § 117. Exercises

**1. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term as well as its English equivalent:**

amnesia; anaesthesiolōgus; apodia; asthenia; brachycheilia; brachydactylia; dolichocephalia; dysthyreōsis; erythropenia; glossoplegia; glycaemia; hyperaemia; hyperthermia; hypotonia; leucocytōsis; melanoderma; microgenia; micromyelia; odontogenēsis; oligocytaemia; oligodontia (= oligodentia); oligophrenia; polymastia; prognathia; splenomegalia; thermotherapia; thrombocytopoësis; thyreotoxicōsis

**2. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:**

abnormal narrowness of the mouth; abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion; abnormal sluggishness of physical movements; a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes; a condition of enlargement of the liver; an abnormally long colon of normal diameter; an increase in the total number of leucocytes; a pathological condition involving many joints; a red blood cell that is larger than normal; a state in which most of the teeth are lacking; a state in which there are too few erythrocytes; dilatation of the stomach; excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body; the origin and development of bone marrow; the origin and development of morbid condition; extremely rapid breathing

**3. Give the full definition and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:**

aglossia; anaemia; brachyoesophagus; cytology; dolichocolon; dystonia; erythema; gnathalgia; haematomyelia; halitosis; hepatomegalia; hyperesthesia; hyperglycaemia; hypertension; hypomnesia; hypophrenia; hypoplasia; hypothermia; macrocyte; megaloduodenum; megalomania; melanocarcinoma; microcephaly; microgenia; monocytogenesis; myelocytæmia; oligodactylia; podagra; podalgia; polyavitaminosis; splenohepatomegaly

**4. Give the Latin dictionary form and translate into English (A) and into Latin (B):**

A. Anaesthesia intraorālis; gingivītis ulcerōsa; hypertrophia muscūli massetēris; hypoplasia enamēli; odontogenēsis imperfecta; syndrōmum immunodeficientiae acquisitæ; trismus gradus primi

B. Chemical burn of the face; false diastema; gingival abscess; hemolytic anemia of pregnancy; latent hypermetropia; primary hypothyroidism; progressive facial hemiatrophy; true hyposalivation; viral warts

## § 118. Vocabulary to lesson 15

### I. Latin-English vocabulary

acquisītus, a, um — acquired

actinomycōsis, is f — an infective disease, caused by *Actinomyces israeli*, actinomycosis

amnesia, ae f — loss of memory of varying degree, amnesia

anaemia, ae f — a condition of the blood in which there are quantitative and qualitative changes in the red cells and hemoglobin, anemia

anaesthesia, ae f — loss of feeling or sensation in some part of the body due to nervous lesion or a local anesthetic agent, anesthesia

anaesthesiolōgus, i m — a specialist in the administration of anaesthetics, anesthesiologist

apodia, ae f — congenital absence of feet, apodia

asthenia, ae f — loss of vital forces, asthenia

atrophia, ae f — a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause, atrophy

brachycephālus, i m — an individual with disproportionately short head, brachycephalic

brachydactylia, ae f — condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia

dolichocephalia, ae f — the state of having a relatively long skull, dolichocephalia

dysthyreōsis, is f — imperfect function of the thyroid gland, dysthyreosis

erythropenia, ae f — a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia

gingivītis, itīdis f — inflammation of the gingival margins around the teeth, manifested by swelling and bleeding, gingivitis

glandŭla, ae f — gland

glossoplegia, ae f — paralysis of the tongue, glossoplegia

glycaemia, ae f — a condition in which the circulating blood contains a quantity of sugar above normal amounts, glycemia

gradus, us m — grade

hyperaemia, ae f — an excess of blood in any part of the body, hyperaemia

hyperthermia, ae f — very high body temperature, hyperthermia

hypertrophia, ae f — an increase in the number or size of the cells of which a tissue is composed as the result of increase in function of that tissue, hypertrophy

hypoplasia, ae f — defective formation or under-development of a tissue or part, hypoplasia

hypotonia, ae f — lessened tension in any body structure, hypotonia

immunodeficientia, ae f — immunodeficiency

imperfectus, a, um — incomplete

intraoralis, e — intraoral

leucocytōsis, is f — an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytosis

m. massēter, ēris m — masseter (muscle)

melanoderma, ātis n — a condition in which there is an unusually large accumulation of melanin in the skin, melanoderma

microcheilia, ae f — a condition in which the lips are abnormally small, microcheilia

microgenia, ae f — a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size, microgenia

micromyelia, ae f — general reduction in size of the spinal cord, micromyelia

odontogenēsis, is f — the origin and formative development of teeth, odontogenesis

oligocytaemia, ae f — a condition in the blood in which there is cell deficiency, oligocytemia

oligodentia, ae f (= oligodontia, ae f) — a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia

oligophrenia, ae f — congenital lack of the mentality, oligophrenia

polymastia, ae f — a state in which in human beings there are more than two distinct mammary glands, polymastia

primus, a, um — first

prognathia, ae f — a condition in which there is abnormal projection of one or both jaws, prognatism

salivarius, a, um — salivary

splenomegalia, ae f — enlargement of the spleen, splenomegalia

syndrōmum, i m — a distinct group of symptoms or signs which, associated together, form a characteristic clinical picture of a disease, syndrome

thermotherapia, ae f — the use of heat in the treatment of disease, thermotherapia

thrombocytopoēsis, is f — the formation of blood platelets, thrombocytopoiesis

thyreotoxicōsis, is f — any toxic condition attributable to hyperactivity of the thyroid gland, thyrotoxicosis

trismus, i m — inability to open the mouth due to tonic contracture of the muscles of the jaw, trismus

ulcerōsus, a, um — having the characteristics of an ulcer, ulcerous

## II. *English-Latin vocabulary*

abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia — hypopepsia, ae f

abscess, an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration — abscessus, us m

an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon — dolichocōlon, i n

abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnea — tachypnoë, ës f

aglossia, a congenital condition of being devoid of a tongue — aglossia, ae f

anaemia, a condition of the blood in which there are quantitative and qualitative changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood — anaemia, ae f

burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents heaving an effect similar to heat — combustio, ōnis f

brachyoesophagus, a congenitally short oesophagus — brachyoesophāgus, i m

a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia — brachydactylia, ae f

a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia — hepatomegalia, ae f

cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells — cytologia, ae f

deviation, an abnormal variant in the development — deviatio, ōnis f

diastema, a pronounced gap between the lateral incisors — diastēma, ātis n

dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia — gastrectasia, ae f

dolichocolon, an abnormally long colon of normal diameter — dolichocōlon, i n

dystonia, a state of disordered tonicity — dystonia, ae f

erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia — erythēma, ātis n

excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body, hyperaesthesia — hyperaesthesia, ae f

extremely rapid breathing, tachypnea — tachypnoë, ës f

false — falsus, a, um

gingival — gingivālis, e

gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws — gnathalgia, ae f

hematomyelia, bleeding within the substance of the spinal cord — haematomyelia, ae f

hemolytic, pertaining to or causing hemolysis — haemolyticus, a, um

hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of the liver — hepatomegalia, ae f

hyperesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body — hyperaesthesia, ae f

hyperglycemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood —  
 hyperglycaemia, ae f  
 hypertension, high arterial blood pressure — hypertensio, ōnis f  
 hypermetropia, a condition in which the image of an object viewed by  
 the eye is formed behind the retina — hypermetropia, ae f  
 hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory — hypomnesia, ae f  
 hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part — hypoplasia, ae f  
 hypothermia, deficiency of body heat — hypothermia, ae f  
 hypothyroidism, a condition caused by under-activity of the thyroid  
 gland — hypothyroidismus, i m (= hypothyreōsis, is f)  
 an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis — leucocytōsis,  
 is f  
 latent, existing but not manifest — latens, ntis  
 macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal — macrocŷtus, i m  
 megaloduodenum, duodenum of abnormally large size — megaloduodēnum,  
 i n  
 melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor —  
 melanocarcinōma, ātis n  
 microcephaly, unusual smallness of the head — microcephalia, ae f  
 microgenia, a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size —  
 microgenia, ae f  
 monocytopoiesis, the production of monocytes in the bone marrow —  
 monocytopoēsis, is f  
 myelocytæmia, the presence of myelocytes in the blood — myelocytæmia,  
 ae f  
 oligodactylia, a congenital deficiency of fingers or toes — oligodactylia, ae f  
 the origin and development of a morbid condition, pathogenesis —  
 pathogenēsis, is f  
 the origin and development of the bone marrow, myelogenesis —  
 myelogenesis, is f  
 a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy —  
 polyarthropathia, ae f  
 podagra, gout, a disease of the purine metabolism characterized by attacks  
 of arthritis with an associated raised serum uric acid — podagra, ae f  
 podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot — podalgia, ae f  
 polyavitaminosis, a morbid condition caused by deficiency of several  
 vitamins — polyavitaminōsis, is f  
 pregnancy — graviditas, ātis f  
 primary — primarius, a, um  
 a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte — macrocŷtus, i m  
 a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia — oligodontia, ae f

a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia — erythropenia, ae f

splenohepatomegaly, enlargement of the spleen and the liver — splenohepatomegalia ae f

wart, a circumscribed, cutaneous excrescence having a papilliferous surface — verrūca, ae f

## Lesson 16

### NAMES OF INFLAMMATORY PROCESSES WHICH OCCUR IN ORGANS AND TISSUES. ONE-WORD NAMES OF ENDOGENOUS PATHOLOGICAL CHANGES AND MALFORMATIONS

#### § 119. Names of inflammatory conditions

The state of inflammation in any organ or tissue, as a rule, is usually expressed by means of the final suffixed element **-ītis** which is transformed into **-itīdis** in the Genitive form. The suffix **-ītis** is added to the initial root of the noun which defines the place of a morbid state. All the terms with the suffix **-ītis** are nouns of the 3<sup>rd</sup> declension:

arthr- (joint) + ītis → **arthrītis, itīdis f** — inflammation of a joint, arthritis

hepat- (liver) + ītis → **hepatītis, itīdis f** — inflammation of the liver, hepatitis

The suffix **-ītis** may be added both to the Greek and Latin roots:

nephr- (Greek *nephros kidney*) + ītis → **nephrītis, itīdis f** — an inflammatory disease of the kidneys, nephritis

tonsill- (Latin *tonsilla, ae f tonsil*) + ītis → **tonsillītis, itīdis f** — an inflammation of the tonsil, tonsillitis

The site of the inflammatory process can be defined more precisely by means of the following prefixes of the Greek origin:

1) **endo-** (inner, mostly a mucous part of an organ):

endo + metr- (*utērus, i m*) + ītis → **endometrītis, itīdis f** — an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis

2) **para-** (cellular, connective and other tissues near an organ):

para- + cyst (*urinary bladder*) + ītis → **paracystītis, itīdis f** — a condition of inflammation affecting the connective and other tissues lying close to the bladder, paracystitis

3) **peri-** (tissues enclosing an organ):

peri- + card- (*heart*) + ītis → **pericardītis, itīdis f** — an inflammation of the membrane enveloping the heart, pericarditis.

Names of some inflammatory morbid conditions are formed without suffix **-ītis**, e. g.:

**panaritium, i n** — an inflammation in the nail fold, panaris (= panaritium);

**phlegmōne, es f** — inflammation of connective tissue without pus formation, phlegmon

**pneumonia, ae f** — an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung, pneumonia

## § 120. Names of pathological cavities

Abscesses, cysts and hernias usually belong to pathological cavities.

Abscess (**abscessus, us m**) is an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration. This Latin noun is used mainly with adjectives:

**abscessus apicalis** — apical abscess, an abscess at the apex of the root of a tooth

**abscessus tonsillāris** — tonsillar abscess, a suppurative condition of the parenchyma of a tonsil.

Cyst (**cysta, ae f**) is a cavity lined by a well-defined epithelium, fibrous or degenerating tissue. This noun both in Latin and English is mainly used in two-word terms with adjectives and nouns:

**cysta choledōchi** — choledochus cyst, cystic dilatation in the common bile duct

**cysta pancreatīca** — pancreatic cyst, a cyst arising within or in close proximity to the pancreas.

Hernia (**hernia, ae f**) is the protrusion of an internal organ through a defect in the wall of the anatomical cavity in which it lies. The noun is used like the previous one with adjectives and nouns:

**hernia cerēbri** — hernia of the brain, protrusion of the brain through a defect in the skull

**hernia inguinālis** — inguinal hernia, hernia in the inguinal canal

In one-word terms, the idea of hernia is expressed by the final root **-cele**:

**gastrocēle, es f** — hernia of the stomach, gasrocele

**myocēle, es f** — hernia of a muscle, myocele

## § 121. Names of tumors

Names of tumors of a definite organ or tissues are formed by means of final suffix **-ōma** added to the initial root which indicates the localization of abnormal growth. All these names are nouns of the 3<sup>rd</sup> declension:

**angiōma, ātis n** — angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or of lymphatic vessels

**nephrōma, ātis n** — nephroma, a tumor derived from renal substance

**osseōma, ātis n** — osseoma, a tumor of bone.

Some names of innocent tumors are formed without the suffix -oma:

**polypus, i m** polypus, a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface

**verruca, ae f** — a wart, a small circumscribed epidermal tumor.

Both nouns are used in multiword terms:

**polypus laryngis** — a polypus of larynx

**verruca plana** — a plane wart.

A malignant tumor or any malignant growth is named cancer — cancer, cri m. This name is used with the nouns and adjectives which define localization of the tumor:

**cancer cutis** — cancer of the skin

**cancer gastris** — cancer of the stomach

A malignant epithelial tumor is called carcinoma — **carcinoma, ātis n**. This noun is used with adjectives mostly:

**carcinoma bronchogenicum** — a bronchogenic carcinoma, carcinoma originating from a bronchus

**carcinoma cutaneum** — carcinoma cutaneum, a squamous-celled carcinoma of the skin.

The name *carcinoma* can also be used as a final root of one-word terms:

**adenocarcinoma, ātis n** — a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma

**chondrocarcinoma, ātis n** — a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements, chondrocarcinoma.

## § 122. Names of concrements

A concrement is a pathological concretion — mostly a small mass which has become calcified in a cavity or in the tissue of a hollow anatomical structure. Such a concretion is denoted in Latin by the nouns **concrementum, i n** or **calcūlus, i m** and an adjective defining the localization of the concretion:

**concrementum nasāle** — nasal calculus

**calcūlus dentālis** — dental calculus

The names of these concretions may also be expressed by one-word terms by means of the final root -lithus (Greek **lithos** stone) added to initial roots: **rhinolīthus, i m** = concrementum nasāle

**odontolīthus, i m** = calcūlus dentālis.

The condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body is called calculosis — **calculōsis, is f**. The formation of concretions is named lithiasis — **lithiāsis, is f**. The same word is used as a final root of several one-word terms:

**broncholithiāsis, is f** — a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis

**cholecystolithiāsis, is f** — a condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct, cholelithiasis

**nephrolithāsis, is f** — a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis

**urolithiāsis, is f** — a morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis

### § 123. Table of initial roots

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
<b>aden-</b>	1) glandūla, ae f; 2) adenoīdes, um f; 3) nodus lymphaticus	1) gland 2) adenoids 3) lymphatic node	aden-
<b>carcin-</b>	cancer, cri m	cancer	carcin-
<b>chole-</b>	bilis, is f; fel, fellis n	bile	chole-
<b>cholecyst-</b>	vesīca biliāris (fellea)	gall bladder	cholecyst-
<b>col-, -colon</b>	1) intestīnum crissum; 2) colon	1) large intestine 2) colon	col-, -colon col-, -colon
<b>cyst-</b>	1) saccus, i m; 2) vesīca, ae f; 3) vesīca urinaria	1) sac; 2) bladder; 3) urinary bladder	cyst-
<b>dacry-</b>	lacrīma, ae f	tear	dacry-
<b>dacryocyst-</b>	saccus lacrimālis	lacrimal sac	dacryocyst-
<b>enter-</b>	1) intestīnum tenue; 2) intestīnum	1) small intestine; 2) intestine	enter-
<b>hist-</b>	textus, us m	tissue	hist-
<b>hyster-, metr-</b>	uterus, i m	uterus	hyster-, metr
<b>lith-</b>	calcūlus, i m concrementum, i n	stone concretion	lith-
<b>lip</b>	adeps, ĩpis m	fatty tissue of the body	lip-
<b>necr-</b>	mortuus, a, um	dead, lifeless	necr-
<b>ne(o)-</b>	novus, a, um	new	ne(o)-
<b>onc-</b>	tumor, ōris m	tumor, swelling	onc-
<b>ophthalm-, -ophthalmia</b>	ocūlus, i m	eye	ophthalm-, -ophthalmia
<b>pan-, pant-</b>	omnis, e	all	pan-, pant-
<b>py-</b>	pus, puris n	pus	py-
<b>scler-</b>	durus, a, um	hard, hardening	scler-
<b>sial-, -sialia</b>	1) salīva, ae f; 2) ductus salivarii	1) saliva; 2) salivary ducts	sial-, -sialia
<b>sten-</b>	strictus, a, um	narrow, narrowing	

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
<b>ur-, -uria</b>	1) urea, ae f; 2) urīna, ae f	1) urea, the chief nitrogenous constituent of urine; 2) urine	ur-, -uria
<b>uran-</b>	palātum, i n	palate	palat-, uran-

### § 124. Table of final roots

<b>-carcinōma</b>	a malignant epithelial tumor
<b>-cele</b>	hernia
<b>-lithiāsis</b>	the formation of concretions
<b>-līthus</b>	a concretion
<b>-necrōsis</b>	death of a portion of a tissue
<b>-rrhagia</b>	hemorrhage (bleeding) in any part of the body
<b>-rrhoea</b>	profuse discharge of mucus or other fluid substance
<b>-salivatio</b>	secretion of saliva
<b>-schīsis</b>	congenial fissure of a tissue
<b>-sclerōsis</b>	hardening of a tissue
<b>-stenōsis</b>	the constriction or narrowing of an orifice or the lumen of a hollow or tubular organ
<b>-stāsis</b>	cessation of the flow of any physiological fluid
<b>-uria</b>	any condition of the urine

**Attention!** Instead of the initial Greek root **uran-** the Latin root **palat-** can be used:

palatoplegia, ae f (palatoplegia, paralysis affecting the soft palate) =  
uranoplegia, ae f (uranoplegia)

palatoschīsis, is f (palatoschisis, cleft palate, a congenial fissure in the midline of the hard palate) = uranoschīsis, is f (uranoschisis)

### § 125. Exercises

**1. Complete orally the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English a full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:**

adenalgia; adenocarcinōma; broncholithiāsis; carcinomatōsis;  
cheilocarcinoma; cheilognathoschīsis; cholecystītis; dacryostenōsis; empyēma;  
endophthalmītis; enterocolītis; gastrocele; gnathoschīsis; histolýsis;  
hyposalivatio; lipuria; lymphostāsis; megalodontia; myocele; neoplasma;  
nephrolithiāsis; odontolīthus; oncolōgus; osteonecrosis; palatoplegia;  
periodontītis; panalgia; pyogēnus; uraemia; uranoschīsis

**2. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:**

abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel; an accumulation of pus in the pericardium; calculus on the teeth; causing the growth of tumors; the discharge of mucus, pus or blood from eye; a discharge of pus; hardening of bony spaces; formation and development of body tissue; the formation of concretions; inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus; inflammation of the liver; narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland; paralysis affecting the soft palate;; profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose; the presence of blood in the urine; the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system; separation of a tissue as a result of its death

**3. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition of each term in English:**

angioma; calculosis; cancerogenic (= carcinogenic); carcinoma; cheilognathopalatoschisis (= cheilognathouranoschisis); cystitis; dacryorrhoea; dropsy; endometritis; enterogastritis; gingivitis; gnathoschisis; hypersalivation; lymphangitis; oncologist; oncotherapy; parotitis; pericystitis; polyposis; sialolith; tonsillitis

**4. Give the Latin dictionary form and translate into English (A) and into Latin (B):**

A. Labium leporinum sive fissum; rhagades labii inferiōris; calcūlus supragingivalis; cancer tunīcae mucōsae oris; polyposis laryngis; verrūcae planae; status textuum praecancerōsus; flegmōne cavitātis oris

B. Simple odontome; arthritis of temporomandibular joint; nasolabial cyst; submandibular adenitis; abscess of hard palate; implantation of inferior canine tooth; verrucose precancer; aphtous recurrent stomatitis

## § 126. Vocabulary to lesson 16

### I. Latin-English vocabulary

achlorhydria, ae f — a complete lack of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice, achlorhydria

adenalgia, ae f — a painful condition of a gland, adenalgia

adenocarcinōma, ātis n — a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma

amenorrhoea, ae f — the pathological absence or stoppage of the menstrual discharge from the uterus, amenorrhoea

broncholithiāsis, is f — a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis

cancer, cri m — cancer

carcinomatōsis, is f — the condition in which carcinoma is widely distributed throughout the body, carcinomatosis

calcūlus, i m — a solid pathological concretion, usually of inorganic mater, formed in any part of the body, calculus

cheilocarcinōma, ātis n — carcinoma of the lip, cheilocarcinoma

cheilognathoschĭsis, is f — hare-lip in which the cleft involves the jaw as well as the lip, cheilognathoschisis

cholecystĭtis, itĭdis f — inflammation of the gallbladder, cholecystitis

dacryostenōsis, is — narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis

empyēma, ātis n — an accumulation of pus in a cavity, empyema

endophthalmĭtis, itĭdis f — a suppurative inflammation of the interior of the eyeball, endophthalmitis

enterocolĭtis, itĭdis f — an inflamed condition of the small intestine and the colon, enterocolitis

fissus, a, um (labium) — splintered (lip), hare-lip

flegmōne, es f — inflammation of the tissue without pus formation, phlegmon

gastrocēle, es f — hernia of the stomach or of a portion which has become pouched, gastrocele

gnathoschĭsis, is f — a congenital fissure of the maxilla, such as is present in cleft palate, gnathoschisis

hidradenĭtis, itĭdis f — inflammation of the sweat glands, hidradenitis

histolĭsis, is f — spontaneous breaking-down or dissolution of living organic tissue, histolysis

hyposalivatio, ōnis f — a condition in which there is an abnormal decrease in secretion of saliva, hyposalivation

leporĭnus, a, um — belonging to the hare (lip)

lipuria, ae f — the presence of an oily emulsion or fat in the urine, lipuria

lymphostāsis, is f — cessation of the flow of lymph, lymphostasis

megalodontia, ae f — a condition in which the teeth are excessively large, megalodontia

mucōsus, a, um — mucous

myocēle, es f — herniation of a muscle, myocele

neoplasma, ātis n — any new and morbid formation of tissue, neoplasm

nephrolithiāsis, is f — a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis

odontolĭthus, i m — calculus on the teeth, odontolith

oncolōgus, i m — a specialist, treating tumorous diseases, oncologist

osteonecrōsis, is f — death of bony tissue, osteonecrosis

palatoplegia, ae f — paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia

pantalgia, ae f — pain affecting all parts of the body, pantalgia

periodontĭtis, itĭdis f — inflammation of the periodontal membrane, periodontitis

planus, a, um — plane  
 polypōsis, is f — condition in which there are many polypi growing from the mucous membrane, polyposis  
 praecancerōsus, a, um — relating or belonging to the stage in which a precancer develops, before the growth has become malignant, precancerous  
 pyogēnus, a, um — forming or producing pus, pyogenic  
 rhagas, ādis f (plur. rhagādes, um f) — fissures, chaps, or cracks at the angle of the mouth, rhagades  
 sive — or  
 status, us m — state  
 supragingivālis, e — supragingival  
 textus, us m — tissue  
 tunīca, ae f — 1) layer, coat; 2) membrane  
 uraemia, ae f — a condition caused by retention of metabolic products in the blood and disturbance of acid-base ratio of the latter, uraemia  
 uranoschīsis, is f (= palatoschīsis, is f) — cleft palate  
 verrūca, ae f — wart

## II. *English-Latin vocabulary*

abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel — angiostenosis, is f  
 angiōma, a tumor composed of blood vessels — angiōma, ātis m  
 calculosis, a condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body — calculōsis, is f  
 calculus of the teeth, odontolith — odontolīhus, i m  
 cancerogenic (= carcinogenic), producing carcinoma — cancerogēnus, a, um  
 carcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor — carcinōma, ātis n  
 causing the growth of tumors, oncogenous — oncogēnus, a, um  
 cheilognathopalatoschisis (= cheilognatouranoschisis), the condition of having both hare-lip and cleft palate — cheilognathopalatoschīsis, is f; cheilognatouranoschīsis, is f  
 cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder — cystītis, itīdis f  
 dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of the tears — dacryorrhoea, ae f  
 the discharge of mucus, pus or blood from eye, ophthalmorrhoea — ophthalmorrhoea, ae f  
 a discharge of pus, pyorrhea — pyorrhea, ae f  
 dropsy, an abnormal collection of fluid in tissue or cavity space — hydrops, ōpis m  
 enterogastritis, an inflammation of the small intestine and the stomach — enterogastrītis, itīdis f  
 formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis — histogenēsis, is f  
 gingivitis, inflammation of the gingival margins around the teeth — gingivītis, itīdis f

gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure in the maxilla such as is present in cleft palate — gnathoschĭsis, is f

hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis — osteosclerōsis, is f

hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva — hypersalivatio, ōnis f

inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis — endometrĭtis, itĭdis f

inflammation of the liver, hepatitis — hepatitis, itĭdis f

lymphangitis, inflammation of lymphatic vessels — lymphangitis, itĭdis f

lymphocytosis, an increase in the number of lymphocytes — lymphocytōsis, is f

narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis — dacryostenōsis, is f

oncologist, a specialist treating tumorous diseases — oncolōgus, i m

oncotherapy, the treatment of tumorous diseases — oncotherapia, ae f

paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia — palatoplegia, ae f

parotitis, an inflammatory state of the parotid gland — parotĭtis, itĭdis f

the presence of blood in the urine, hematuria — haematuria, ae f

profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose, rhinorrhea — rhinorrhoea, ae f

the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis — urolithiāsis, is f

sialolith, a salivary calculus — sialolithus, i m

a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by emboli, thromboembolia (thromboembolism) — thromboēmbolia, ae f (thromboēmbolismus, i m)

tonsillitis, inflammation of the tonsil — tonsillitis, itĭdis f

## § 127. Model (Sample) of the final test in clinical terminology

**1. Give Greek initial roots and Latin equivalents (in the dictionary form) with the following meanings:**

1) blood; 2) cell; 3) black; 4) kidney; 5) tissue.

**2. Compose one-word terms in the dictionary form with the following meaning:**

1) a specialist treating tumorous diseases; 2) any new and morbid formation of tissue; 3) forming or producing pus; 4) a red blood cell that is larger than normal; 5) a state in which most of the teeth are lacking.

**3. Write down in the dictionary form the Latin equivalents of the following terms and give the full definition of each term:**

1) erythema; 2) iatrogenic; 3) macrocyte; 4) phthisiologist; 5) stomatitis.

**4. Write down the dictionary form and translate in English:**

1) arthritis of temporomandibular joint; 2) comatose state; 3) denudation of the tooth cervix; 4) viral and bacterial infections.

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

### A

**abscessus, us m** an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration, abscess

**actinomycōsis, is f**, an affective disease, caused by *Actinomyces israeli*, actinomycosis

**acquisītus, a, um** acquired

**acūtus, a, um** acute

**adenalgia, ae f** a painful condition of a gland, adenalgia

**adenocarcinōma, ātis n**

a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma

**aliēnus, a, um** foreign

**allergīcus, a, um** allergic

**alopecia, ae f** loss of hair, alopecia

**amnesia, ae f** loss of memory of varying degree, amnesia

**anaemia, ae f** a condition of the blood in which there are quantitative and qualitative changes in the red cells and hemoglobin, anemia

**anaesthesia, ae f** loss of feeling or sensation in some part of the body due to nervous lesion or a local anesthetic agent, anaesthesia

**anaesthesiolōgus, i m** a specialist in the administration of anaesthetics, anesthesiologist

**angiopathia, ae f** any disease of blood vessels, angiopathy

**anthropogēnus, a, um** caused by human activities

**anthropologia, ae f** science studying the man in the process of his evolution, anthropology

**anthropolōgus, i m** specialist

studying the man in the process of his evolution, anthropologist

**apodia, ae f** congenital absence of feet, apodia

**arteria, ae f** artery

**asthenia, ae f** loss of vital forces, asthenia

**atrophia, ae f** a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause, atrophy

**autohaemotherapia, ae f** a method of treatment in which the patient's own blood is administered to him, autohaemotherapy

### B

**bacteriālis, e** bacterial, originating or derived from, belonging to or consisting of bacteria

**benignus, a, um** benign

**biologia, ae f** biology, science studying forms of life and living organisms

**blepharītis, itīdis f** inflammation of the eyelids, blepharitis

**blepharoplastīca, ae f** a plastic operation to restore an eyelid

**brachydactylia, ae f** a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia

**bradyphagia, ae f** slowing of swallowing, bradyphagia

**bradypnoë, ës f** an abnormally slow rate of breathing, bradypnoea

**broncholithiāsis, is f** the condition in which calculi occur in the lumen of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis

**bucca, ae f** cheek

## C

**cadāver, ěris n** a corpse; a lifeless human body  
**calcūlus, i m** a solid pathological concretion, usually of inorganic matter, formed in any part of the body, calculus  
**cancer, cri m** cancer  
**carcinōma, ātis n** a malignant epithelial tumor, carcinoma  
**carcinomatōsis, is f** the condition in which carcinoma is widely distributed throughout the body, carcinomatosis  
**cardiogēnus, a, um** cardiogenic, arising because of the heart  
**cardiolōgus, i m** a specialist treating heart diseases, cardiologist  
**caries, ěi f** a gradual decay of death of bone as a result of chronic infection, caries  
**cariōsus, a, um** affected with caries, carious  
**cerēbrum, i n** cerebrum  
**cervix, ĩcis f** cervix  
**cholecystitis, itīdis f** inflammation of the gallbladder, cholecystitis  
**cheilocarcinōma, ātis n** carcinoma of the lip, cheilocarcinoma  
**cheilognathoschīsis, is f** hare-lip in which the cleft involves the jaw as well as the lip, cheilognathopalatoschisis  
**cholecystītis, itīdis f** inflammation of the gallbladder, cholecystitis  
**chondropathia, ae f** any disease affecting a cartilage, chondropathy  
**chronīcus, a, um** long continued, chronic,  
**combustio, ōnis f** an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical

agents having an effect similar to heat, burn, combustion

**commotio, ōnis f** a concussion or a violent shaking of a structure  
**congelatio, ōnis f** congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition caused by freezing  
**congenītus, a, um** congenital  
**continuus, a, um** continued  
**cor, cordis n** heart  
**cornea, ae f** cornea  
**corpus, ōris n** body  
**craniometria, ae f** measurement of the skull, craniometry  
**cryotherapia, ae f** the science of the use of cold as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy  
**cuneiformis, e** cuneiform  
**curatio, ōnis f** medical treatment  
**cysta, ae f** a cavity lined by an inflamed or neoplastic tissue, cyst  
**cystorrhagia, ae f** haemorrhage from the urinary bladder, cystorrhagia

## D

**dacryostenōsis, is f** narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis  
**dactylospasmus, i m** spasmodic contraction of a finger or toe, dactylospasm  
**defectus, us m** a defect  
**deformans, ntis** deforming  
**dentālis, e** dental  
**dentinogenēsis, is f** the formation and development of the dentine by the odontoblasts, dentinogenesis  
**dermatomycōsis, is f** a generic term for all cutaneous infections due to fungi  
**dermatōsis, is f** any disease of the skin, dermatosis

**dexter, tra, trum** right  
**diabētes, ae m** anyone of a group of diseases in which there is polyuria and a disturbed metabolism, diabetes  
**diabetīcus, a, um** diabetic, suffering from or relating to diabetes  
**diagnōsis, is f** medical denotation of the disease from which a person suffers, diagnosis  
**digītus, i m** finger, toe  
**dolichocephalia, ae f** the state of having a relatively long skull, dolichocephalia  
**duodēnum, i n** duodenum  
**dysgeusia, ae f** impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia  
**dysplasia, ae f** abnormal development of tissue, dysplasia  
**dysthyreōsis, is f** imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreosis

## E

**embryologia, ae f** the branch of biological science which is concerned with the origin and development of the embryo from the ovum to the stage of extrauterine life, embryology  
**empyēma, ātis n** a collection of pus in a cavity, empyema  
**encephalogramma, ātis n** any X-ray film obtained in the radiological examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space of the brain, encephalogram  
**endophthalmītis, itīdis f** a suppurative inflammation of the interior of eyeball, endophthalmitis

**enterocolītis, itīdis f** an inflamed condition of the small intestine and the colon, enterocolitis  
**erosio, ōnis f** any superficial destructive process, erosion  
**erythropenia, ae f** a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia  
**exacerbatio, ōnis f** increase in severity of a disease, exacerbation  
**extractio, ōnis f** the act or process of drawing out a part of body or foreign body, extraction

## F

**faciālis, e** facial  
**facies, ēi f** face  
**febris, is f** fever  
**fissus, a, um** splintered (lip)  
**fistūla, ae f** an unnatural communication between an organ and the body surface, fistula  
**flegmōne, es f** inflammation of connective tissue without pus formation, phlegmon  
**f(o)etor, ōris m** a foul odour or stench, fetor  
**fractūra, ae f**

## G

**gaster, tris f** stomach  
**gastrocēle, es f** hernia of the stomach or of a portion which has become pouched, gastrocele  
**gastrospasmus, i m** an involuntary contraction of the stomach muscle, gastrospasm  
**gastrostōma, ātis n** natural or artificial gastric fistula, gastrostoma  
**geriāter, tri m** a specialist treating diseases of the aged, geriatrician

**gingivālis, e** gingival  
**gingivītis, itīdis f** inflammation of the gingival margins around the teeth, manifested by swelling and bleeding, gingivitis  
**glandūla, ae f** gland  
**glossoplegia, ae f** paralysis of the tongue, glossoplegia  
**glycaemia, ae f** a condition in which the circulating blood contains a quantity of sugar above normal amounts, glycaemia  
**gnathoschīsis, is f** a congenital fissure of the maxilla, such as is present in cleft palate, gnathoschisis  
**gradus, us m** grade  
**granulōma, ātis n** a tumour composed of granulation tissue, granuloma  
**gravīda, ae f** a woman who is pregnant, gravida  
**gynaecolōgus, i m** a specialist for treatment genital diseases in women, gynecologist

## H

**haemarthrōsis, sis f** extravasation of blood into a joint, haemarthrosis  
**haematologia, ae f** branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases, hematology,  
**halitōsis, is f** fetid or offensive breath, halitosis  
**hemicrania, ae f** a periodic morbid condition with localized headaches, hemicrania  
**hemiplegia, ae f** paralysis of one half of the body, hemiplegia  
**hepar, ātis n** liver  
**herpes, ētis m** inflammation of the skin or mucous membrane,

with clusters of deep-seated vesicles, herpes  
**hidradenītis, itīdis f** inflammation of the sweat glands, hidradenitis  
**histolysis, is f** spontaneous dissolution of living organic tissue, histolysis  
**hyperaemia, ae f** an excess of blood in any part of the body, hyperaemia  
**hyperthermia, ae f** very high body temperature, hyperthermia  
**hypertrophia, ae f** an increase in the number or size of the cells of which a tissue is composed as the result of increase in function of that tissue, hypertrophy  
**hypoplasia, ae f** defective formation or under-development of a tissue or part, hypoplasia  
**hyposalivatio, ōnis f** a condition in which there is abnormal decrease in the secretion of saliva, hyposalivation  
**hypotonia, ae f** lessened tension in any body structure, hypotonia

## I

**iatrogēnus, a, um** happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks, iatrogenic  
**immunodeficientia, ae f** immunodeficiency  
**imperfectus, a, um** incomplete  
**icisīvus, a, um** incisor (tooth)  
**indigestio, ōnis f** any disturbance of the normal process of digestion, indigestion  
**infarctus, us m** a wedge-shaped area of dead tissue, with or without haemorrhage, produced by

the obstruction of an end artery,  
infarct, infarction

**infectio, ōnis f** the invasion of  
a pathogenic organism into  
the body and its subsequent  
multiplication, infection

**inflammatio, ōnis f** inflammation

**insufficiētia, ae f** the state of being  
inadequate to perform normal  
function, insufficiency

**intraorālis, e** intraoral

## K

**keratotomia, ae f** making an incision  
into the cornea, keratotomy

## L

**labiālis, e** labial

**larynx, yngis m** larynx

**latens, ntis** hidden

**leporīnus, a, um** belonging to  
the hare

**leucocytōsis, is f** an increase in  
the total number of leucocytes  
in the blood, leucocytōsis

**ligamentum, i n** ligament

**lingua, ae f** tongue

**lipuria, ae f** the presence of an oily  
emulsion or fat in the urine, lipuria

**lumbālis, e** lumbal

**luxatio, ōnis f** dislocation, luxation

**lymphostāsis, is f** cessation of  
the flow of lymph, lymphostasis

## M

**maculōsus, a, um** maculate, marked  
by maculae

**mandibŭla, ae f** mandible

**massēter, ēris m** masseter (muscle)

**megacōlon, i n** a condition in which  
there is great dilatation of the large  
intestine, megacolon

**megalodontia, ae f** a condition in  
which the teeth are excessively  
large, megalodontia

**melanoderma, ātis n** a condition  
in which there is an unusually  
large accumulation of melanin  
in the skin, melanoderma

**mellītus, a, um (diabētes)** mellitus  
(diabetes) characterized by a high-  
fasting blood sugar

**metamorphōsis, is f** change of form  
or structure, metamorphosis

**microcheilia, ae f** a condition in  
which the lips are abnormally  
small, microcheilia

**microgenia, ae f** a condition in  
which the chin is of unusually  
small size, microgenia

**micromyelia, ae f** general reduction  
in size of the spinal cord,  
micromyelia

**mobilitas, ātis f** mobility

**monodactylismus, i m** a congenital  
condition in which one finger or  
toe only is present on the hand or  
the foot, monodactylism

**morbis, i m** disease

**mucōsus, a, um** mucous

**myelitis, itīdis f** inflammation of  
bone marrow, myelitis

**myocēle, es f** hernia of a muscle,  
myocele

**myoplegia, ae f** paralysis of muscle  
or a condition in which is  
decreased muscular force,  
myoplegia

**myotomia, ae f** the dissection of  
a muscle or of muscle tissue,  
myotomy

## N

**neoplasma, ātis n** any new and morbid formation of tissue, neoplasm  
**nephrolithiāsis, is f** a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis  
**nervus, i m** nerve  
**neuralgia, ae f** a painful affection of the nerves, due to functional disturbances or to neuritis, neuralgia  
**neurītis, itīdis f** inflammation of a nerve, neuritis  
**neuropatholōgus, i m** a specialist treating diseases of nervous system, neuropathologist

## O

**occipitālis, e** occipital  
**ocūlus, i m** eye  
**odontolīthus, i m** calculus on the teeth, odontolith  
**odontogenēsis, is f** the origin and formative development of teeth, odontogenesis  
**odontogramma, ātis n** X-ray film of the tooth, odontogram  
**odontolīthus, i m** calculus of the teeth, odontolith  
**odontoscopia, ae f** instrumental-visual examination of the tooth, odontoscopy  
**oligocytaemia, ae f** a condition in the blood in which there is cell deficiency, oligocytaemia  
**oligodentia, ae f (= oligodontia, ae f)** a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodentia (oligodontia)

**oligophrenia, ae f** congenital lack of the mentality, oligophrenia  
**oncolōgus, i m** a specialist treating tumors, oncologist  
**ophthalmoscopia, ae f** instrumental-visual examination of the eye, ophthalmoscopy  
**os, oris n** mouth  
**osteōma, ātis n** an innocent tumor of bone, osteoma  
**osteonecrōsis, is f** death of bony tissue, osteonecrosis  
**osteopathia, ae f** disease of bones, osteopathia  
**osteoporōsis, is f** rarefaction of bone, osteoporosis  
**otorhinolaryngologia, ae f** branch of medicine for treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx, otorhinolaryngology

## P

**palatoplegia, ae f** paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia  
**pantalgia, ae f (= panalgia, ae f)** pain affecting all parts of the body, pantalgia  
**parodontōsis, is f (= periodontōsis, is f)** any degenerative change occurring in alveolar periosteum, parodontosis  
**periodontītis, itīdis f** inflammation of the periodontal membrane, periodontitis  
**pes, pedis m** leg  
**phlebocarcinōma, ātis n** a malignant epithelial tumor affecting a vein, phlebocarcinoma  
**photophobia, ae f** abnormal intolerance to light, photophobia

**phthisiāter, tri m** a specialist treating tuberculosis, phthisiotherapist

**physiologia, ae f** science studying normal vital processes in human body, physiology

**phytotherapia, ae f** method of treatment by means of medical plants, phytotherapy

**planus, a, um** plane

**plicātus, a, um** folded, plicate

**polymastia, ae f** the state in which in human beings there are more than two distinct mammary glands, polymastia

**polypōsis, is f** a condition in which there are many polypi growing from the mucous membrane, polyposis

**polypus, i m** a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface, polyp

**polyuria, ae f** increase in the amount of the excreted urine, polyuria

**praecancerōsus, a, um** relating or belonging to the stage in which a precancer develops, before the growth has become malignant, precancerous

**premolaris, e** premolar

**primus, a, um** first

**proctolōgus, i m** a specialist treating diseases of rectum, proctologist

**profundus, a, um** deep

**prognathia, ae f** a condition in which there is abnormal projection of one or both jaws, prognatism

**prophylaxis, is f** the art of preventing disease, prophylaxis

**pseudoarthrōsis, is f** a false joint formed between the fragments of

a fractured bone which have failed to unite, pseudarthrosis

**psychiatria, ae f** branch of medicine treating mental diseases, psychiatry

**psychōsis, is f** any kind of mental disorder, psychosis

**pyogēnus, a, um** forming or producing pus, pyogenic

## R

**radiculāris, e** radicular

**rectum, i n** rectum

**renālis, e** renal

**resectio, ōnis f** surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach etc., resection

**rhagas, ādis f** usually plur.

**rhagādes, um f** fissures, chaps, or cracks at the angle of the mouth, rhagades

**rhinogramma, ātis n** X-ray film of the nose, rhinogram

**ruptūra, ae f** the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or an other structure, rupture

## S

**salivarius, a, um** salivary

**sarcōma, ātis n** a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma

**sectio, ōnis f** the act of cutting, section

**senīlis, e** senile

**simplex, ĩcis** simple

**situs, us m** position, site

**sive** or

**spasmophilia, ae f** a morbid state in which there is a tendency to convulsions and spasm, spasmophilia

**spasmus, i m** a sudden, powerful, involuntary contraction of muscle, spasm

**splenomegalia, ae f** enlargement of the spleen, splenomegalia

**spondylitis, itīdis f** inflammation of the spine, spondilitis

**spongiōsus, a, um** spongy (spongyous), full of small holes, like a sponge

**stomatomycōsis, is f** any morbid condition of the oral cavity caused by a microscopial fungus, stomatomycosis

**stomatoscopia, ae f** visual-instrumental examination of the oral cavity, stomatoscopy

**suppurativus, a, um** pus-forming, having a tendency toward suppuration, suppurative

**supraringivālis, e** supraringival

**syndrōmum, i n** a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease, syndrome

## T

**tachycardia, ae f** rapid action of the heart, tachycardia

**tenorrhaphia, ae f** an operation for the suturing of the divided ends of a tendon, tenorrhaphy

**tenotomia, ae f** the cutting of a tendon, tenotomy

**textus, us m** a tissue

**thermotherapia, ae f** the use of heat in the treatment of disease, thermotherapia

**thromboticus, a, um** characterized or caused by thrombosis, thrombotic

**thyroideus, a, um** thyroid

**thyr(e)otoxīcōsis, is f** any toxic condition attributable to hyperactivity of the thyroid gland, thyrotoxicosis

**toxicomania, ae f** an insane desire for poison, toxicomania

**toxicōsis, is f** the pathological condition caused by the adsorption of poison, toxicosis

**transplantātum, i n** a piece of tissue to transfer from one site to another, transplant

**traumatīcus, a, um** traumatic

**trismus, i m** inability to open the mouth due to tonic contracture of the muscles of the jaw, trismus

**tuberculōsis, is f** tuberculosis

**tunīca, ae f** membrane

## U

**ulcerōsus, a, um** having the characteristics of an ulcer, ulcerous

**ulcus, ěris n** a localized necrotic lesion of the skin or a mucous surface, ulcer

**unguis, is m** nail

**uraemia, ae f** the condition which is associated with the retention of metabolic products in the blood and disturbance of acid-base ratio of the latter, uraemia

**uranoschīsis, is f** (= palatoschīsis, is f) cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate, uranoschisis (palatoschisis)

**utĕrus, i m** uterus

## V

**venōsus, a, um** venous

**verrūca, ae f** wart

**verus, a, um** true

**viscus, ěris n** the internal organs of the body which are closely related to the great serous cavities: pleural, pericardial or peritoneal

**vitium, i n** a defect or a vice, vitium

## **X**

**xerophthalmia, ae f** a morbid condition of eyes characterized by a shrunken appearance of the conjunctiva, xerophthalmia (= xeroma)

## **Z**

**zoster, ěris m** zoster, zona, shingles

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

### A

**abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel, angiostenosis** angiostenōsis, is f  
**abnormal narrowing of the mouth, stenostomy** stenostomia, ae f  
**abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia** tachyphagia, ae f  
**abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnoea** tachypnoë, ës f  
**abscess, an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration** abscessus, us m  
**acquired** acquisītus, a, um  
**actinomycosis, an affective disease, caused by Actinomyces israeli** actinomycōsis, is f  
**the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body, extraction** extractio, ōnis f  
**acute** acūtus, a, um  
**adiponecrosis, necrosis affecting the fatty tissue of the body** adiponecrōsis, is f  
**aglossia, the congenital condition of being without a tongue** aglossia, ae f  
**alimentary** alimentarius, a, um  
**allergic** allergīcus, a, um  
**amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or a portion of a limb or of any other appendage** amputatio, ōnis f  
**anaemia, changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood** anaemia, ae f  
**angiology, the science of the blood vessels** angiologia, ae f

**angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or of lymphatic vessels** angiōma, ātis, n  
**anthropologist, a specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution** anthropolōgus, i m  
**aortic** aortīcus, a, um  
**apn(o)ea, the cessation in breathing** apnoë, ës f  
**arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting a joint** arthralgia, ae f  
**atrachia, not having hair** atrichia, ae f  
**atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause** atrophia, ae f  
**atypical** atypīcus, a, um

### B

**bacterial** bacteriālis, e  
**benign** benignus, a, um  
**biopharmaceutics, study of physical and chemical properties of medicinal substances** biopharmaceutīca, ae f  
**blepharotomy, incision of an eyelid** blepharotomia, ae f  
**bradycardia, slowing of the heart rate** bradycardia, ae f  
**bradyphagia, slowing of swallowing** bradyphagia, ae f  
**branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases, proctology** proctologia, ae f  
**branch of medicine treating diseases of children, paediatrics** paediatra, ae f  
**breast** mamma, ae f

**bronchitis, an inflamed condition of the bronchi**  
bronchītis, itīdis f

**burn** combustio, ōnis f

## C

**calculosis, the condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body**  
calculōsis, is f

**calculus (plur. calculi), a solid pathological concretion** calcūlus, i m

**calculus on the teeth, odontolith**  
odontolithus, i m

**cancerogenic (= carcinogenic), producing carcinoma**  
cancerogēnus, a, um

**carcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor** carcinōma, ātis n

**a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma** adenocarcinōma, ātis n

**cardinal** cardinālis, e

**cardiogram** 1) result of X-ray examination of the heart;  
2) graphical picture of heart work cardiogramma, ātis n

**cardiography** 1) X-ray examination of the heart; 2) graphical recording of heart activity  
cardiographia, ae f

**causing the growth of tumors, oncogenous** oncogēnus, a, um

**cephalalgia, pain in the head**  
cephalalgia, ae f

**cerebral** cerebrālis, e

**cervix** cervix, īcis f

**changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood** anaemia, ae f

**cheilognathopalatoschisis (= cheilognathouranoschisis), the condition of having both hare-lip and cleft palate**  
cheilognathopalatoschīsis, is f  
(= cheilognathouranoschīsis, is f)  
(gnathouranoschisis)

**chemical** chemīcus, a, um

**cholecystolithiasis, the condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct**  
cholecystolithiāsīsis, is f

**chronic** chronīcus, a, um

**a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales, psoriasis**  
psoriāsīsis, is f

**closed** clausus, a, um

**coma, the state of complete loss of consciousness from which the patient cannot be roused by any ordinary external stimulus**  
coma, ātis n

**comatose, affected with coma**  
comatōsus, a, um

**composite** composītus, a, um

**a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure** commotio, ōnis f

**a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis**  
nephrolithiāsīsis, is f

**a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking, aphagia**  
aphagia, ae f

**a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia** brachydactylia, ae f

**a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia**  
hepatomegalia, ae f  
**cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder** cystītis, itīdis f  
**cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells** cytologia, ae f

## D

**dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of tears** dacryorrhoea, ae f  
**deficiency** deficientia, ae f  
**denudation, the state of being deprived of a protecting layer or covering** denudatio, ōnis f  
**dermatitis, inflammation of the skin** dermatītis, itīdis f  
**devitalized, deprived of life or vitalizing properties**  
devitalisātus, a, um  
**diabetic, related to diabetes**  
diabetīcus, a, um  
**diastema, a pronounced gap between the lateral incisors**  
**dilatation of the stomach**  
diastēma, āis n  
**dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia** gastrectasia, ae f  
**direct** directus, a, um  
**a discharge of pus, pyorrhoea**  
pyorrhoea, ae f  
**any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy** arthropathia, ae f  
**any disease of skin, dermatosis**  
dermatosis, is f  
**dropsy, the abnormal accumulation of fluid in tissue or cavity space** hydrops, ōpis m  
**dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue** dysplasia, ae f

**dystonia, a state of disordered tonicity** dystonia, ae f  
**dystrophy, a disorder of the structure and functions of an organ or tissue due to perverted nutrition** dystrophia, ae f

## E

**eczema, a nocontagious inflammatory disease of the skin with much itching and burning**  
eczēma, ātis n  
**empyema, an accumulation of pus in a cavity,**  
**emphysema, a condition in which the alveoli of the lungs are dilated** emphysēma, ātis n  
**encephalopathy, any morbid condition of the brain**  
encephalopathia, ae f  
**endogenous, having origin within the organism** endogēnus, a, um  
**endometritis, an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus** endometrītis, itīdis f  
**enophthalmus, recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit** enophthalmus, i m  
**enteritis, inflammation of the mucous membrane of the intestines** enterītis, itīdis f  
**enterogastritis, inflammation of the small intestine and the stomach** enterogastrītis, itīdis f  
**enteromegalia, an unusually large size of the intestine**  
enteromegalia, ae f  
**the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host, invasion** invasio, ōnis f

**erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia** erythēma, ātis n  
**excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body,**  
**hyperaesthesia** hyperaesthesia, ae f  
**exogenous, belonging to aetiological factors outside the organism** exogēnus, a, um  
**extremely rapid breathing,**  
**tachypnea** tachypnoē, ēs f  
**eye** oculus, i m

## F

**false** falsus, a, um  
**femur** femur, ōris n  
**fever** febris, is f  
**fibroma, an innocent tumor composed chiefly of connective tissue** fibrōma, ātis n  
**fibrous** fibrōsus, a, um  
**formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis** hystogenēsis, is f  
**the formation of concretions, lithiasis** lithiāsis, is f  
**fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone** fractūra, ae f  
**frenūlum** frenūlum, i n  
**functional** functionālis, e

## G

**gall bladder** vesīca fellea (biliāris)  
**gerontology, science studying living processes in the aged** gerontologia, ae f  
**gingival** gingivālis, e  
**gland** glandūla, ae f  
**glaucoma, a condition of increased intraocular pressure and its consequences** glaucōma, ātis n

**glossitis, inflammation of the tongue** glossītis, itīdis f  
**glossotomy, dissection of the tongue** glossotomia, ae f  
**gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws** gnathalgia, ae f  
**gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure in the maxilla** gnathoschīsis, is f  
**goitre, an enlargement of the thyroid gland** struma, ae f

## H

**hand** manus, us f  
**hard** durus, a, um  
**hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis** osteosclerōsis, is f  
**hematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases** haematologia, ae f  
**hemiatrophy, atrophy affecting only one side of the body, or a half of an organ** hemidystrophia, ae f  
**hemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood** haemogramma, ātis n  
**hemophilia, a severe hereditary bleeding disease affecting males and transmitted by females** haemophilia, ae f  
**hepatic** hepaticus, a, um  
**hepatitis, inflammation of the liver** hepatītis, itīdis f  
**hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of the liver** hepatomegalia, ae f  
**hereditary** hereditarius, a, um  
**hyperesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body** hyperaesthesia, ae f

**hyperglycemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood**  
hyperglycaemia, ae f

**hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva** hypersalivatio, ōnis f

**hypertension, high arterial blood pressure** hypertensio, ōnis f

**hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory** hypomnesia, ae f

**hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part** hypoplasia, ae f

**hypothermia, deficiency of body heat** hypothermia, ae f

**hypothyroidism, a condition caused by under-activity of the thyroid gland,** hypothyroidismus, i m  
(= hypothyreōsis, is f)

## I

**iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks,** iatrogenic

**immunodeficiency**  
immunodeficientia, ae f

**impairment of the voice,**  
**dysphonia** dysphonia, ae f

**implant, any piece of tissue used as a graft** implantātum, i n

**implantation, the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body** implantatio, ōnis f

**an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis**  
leucocytōsis, is f

**infection** infectio, ōnis f

**inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus,**

**endometritis** endondometrītis, itīdis f

**inflammation of the liver, hepatitis**  
hepatītis, itīdis f

**injury** laesio ,ōnis f

**insufficiency** insufficientia, ae f

**internal** internus, a, um

**intravenous** intravenōsus, a, um

## J

**joint** articulatio, ōnis f

## K

**keratomycosis, disease of cornea caused by a fungus**

keratomycōsis, is f

**any kind of pain affecting a joint,**  
**arthralgia** arthralgia, ae f

## L

**latent, existing but not manifest**  
lateens, ntis

**left** sinister, tra, trum

**lingual** linguālis, e

**lip** labium, i n

**lung** pulmo, ōnis m

**luxation, dislocation** luxatio, ōnis f

**lymphangiitis, inflammation of lymphatic vessels** lymphangiītis, itīdis f

**lymphocytosis, an increase in the number of lymphocytes**  
lymphocytōsis, is f

## M

**macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal** macrocŷtus, i m

**malignant, indicative of danger to ill (neoplasm)** malignus, a, um

**mammogram (= mastogram) result of breast X-ray examination,** mammogramma, ātis n  
**masticatory** masticatorius, a, um  
**mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland** mastopathia, ae f  
**medical specialist treating blood diseases, hematologist** haematolōgus, i m  
**medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs, therapist** therapeutista, ae m  
**megalomania, a mental condition in which a person has grandiose delusions about himself and his own intellect, power, importance and so on** megalomania, ae f  
**melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor** melanocarcinōma, ātis n  
**metastasis, the transfer of disease from its primary site to distant parts of the body by blood vessels, lymphatics or direct contiguity** metastāsis, is f  
**any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy** rhinopathia, ae f  
**any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair, trichopathy** trichopathia, ae f  
**myopia, short sight** myopia, ae f

## N

**narcosis, stupor produced by drugs and tending to insensibility and paralysis** narcōsis, is f  
**narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis** dacryostenōsis, is f  
**nasal** nasālis, e

**nephrogenic, produced by or originating in a kidney** nephrogēnus, a, um  
**nephropathy, disease of the kidney** nephropathia, ae f  
**neurogenic, happening because of the nervous system** neurogēnus, a, um

## O

**occlusion, the contact between upper and lower teeth on the closure of the jaws or during normal movement of the mandible** occlusion, ōnis f  
**odontogenic, relating to the development of the teeth** odontogēnus, a, um  
**odontome, a solid or cystic tumour occurring in the jaws which is derived from cells conserved in tooth development** odontōma, ātis n  
**oedema, the presence of excessive amounts of fluid in the intercellular tissue spaces of the body** oedēma, ātis n  
**oesophagostenosis, narrowing of the oesophagus** oesophagostenōsis, is f  
**oesophagus** oesophāgus, i m  
**oligodactyilia, a congenital deficiency of fingers, or toes** oligodactyilia, ae f  
**oncologist, a specialist treating tumorous diseases** oncolōgus, i m  
**oncotherapy, the treatment of tumours** oncotherapia, ae f  
**open** apertus, a, um  
**operation** operatio, ōnis f

**the operation of removal of the adenoid growth by excision, adenotomy** adenotomia, ae f  
**ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye** ophthalmoscopia, ae f  
**ophthalmoplegia, pulsy (paralysis) of ocular muscles** ophthalmoplegia, ae f  
**the origin and development of morbid condition,**  
**pathogenesis** pathogenēsis, is f  
**the origin, formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis** histogenēsis, is f  
**osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone nutrition** osteodystrophia, ae f  
**osteotomy, dissection of a bone** osteotomia, ae f  
**otogenic, happening because of the ear** otogēnus, a, um  
**otorhinolaryngologist, a specialist treating ear, nose and larynx diseases** otorhinolaryngolōgus, i m

## P

**paralysis, loss of motor strength due to a functional or organic disorder of neural or neuromuscular mechanism** paralýsis, is f  
**paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia** palatoplegia, ae f  
**paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia** diplegia, ae f  
**paranephritis, an inflammatory condition involving the connective tissue adjacent to the kidney** paranephritis, itīdis f  
**parotitis, an inflammaty state of the parotid gland** parotitis, itīdis f

**partial** partiālis, e  
**a pathological condition in which one muscle, one group of muscle or one part of the body is only affected, monoplegia** monoplegia, ae f  
**pediatrician, a specialist treating children's diseases** paediāter, tri m  
**pericystitis, inflammation in which the structures around the urinary bladder are affected** pericystitis, itīdis f  
**a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus** microcephālus, i m  
**pharmacophobia, morbid fear of taking drugs or medicines** pharmacophobia, ae f  
**pharmacotherapia, science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacotherapy** pharmacotherapia, ae f  
**phlebography: 1) radiographic visualization of veins; 2) the tracing of the venous pulse by means of a phlebograph** phlebographia, ae f  
**phoniatics (= phoniatriy), the treatment of disorders of speech** phoniatria, ae f  
**photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light** photophobia, ae f  
**phthisiologist, a specialist treating tuberculosis** phthisiāter, tri m  
**phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medical plants** phytotherapia, ae f  
**plicated** plicātus, a, um  
**pneumonia, inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung** pneumonia, ae f

**podagra, gout, a disease of the purine metabolism characterized by attacks of arthritis with an associated raised serum uric acid** podāgra, ae f

**podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot** podalgia, ae f

**polyavitaminosis, a morbid condition caused by deficiency of several vitamins** polyavitaminōsis, is f

**polyposis, a condition in which the colon is studded with polypi growing from the mucous membrane** polypōsis, is f

**postoperative** postoperatīvus, a, um

**pregnancy** gravidītas, ātis f

**primary** primarius, a, um

**proctoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the rectum** proctoscopia, ae f

**the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis** urolithiāsis, is f

**profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose, rhinorrhoea** rhinorrhoea, ae f

**progressive** progressīvus, a, um

**prophylaxis, the art of preventing disease** prophylaxis, is f

**protrusive, removed ahead** protrusīvus, a, um

**psychiatrist, specialist treating mental diseases** psychiāter, tri m

**psychogenic, developing or originating of mental causes** psychogēnus, a, um

**psychologist, specialist studying mental activities of a human personality** psycholōgus, i m

**pulp** pulpa, ae f

**pyuria, a condition in which pus is present in the urine** pyuria, ae f

## R

**a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte** macrocŷtus, i m

**removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part,**

**amputation** amputatio, ōnis f

**resection, surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e.g. jaw, stomach,**

**colon etc.** resectio, ōnis f

**results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood, hemogram** haemogramma, ātis n

**rhinolith, a concretion in the cavity of the nose** rhinolīthus, i m

**rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose** rhinopathia, ae f

**rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the nose** rhinoscopia, ae f

**rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or an other structure**

ruptūra, ae f

**right** dexter, tra, trum

## S

**salivary** salivarius, a, um

**short** brevis, e

**science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacotherapy** pharmacotherapia, ae f

**scientist studying normal vital processes in human organism**  
 physioloġus, i m  
**secondary** secundarius, a, um  
**senile** senīlis, e  
**septum** septum, i n  
**sialolith, a salivary calculus**  
 sialolīthus, i m  
**simple** simplex, ĩcis  
**specialist studying forms of life and vital organisms, biologist**  
 bioloġus, i m  
**specialist studying the man in process of his evolution, anthropologist** anthropoloġus, i m  
**specialist treating**  
 ~ **blood diseases, hematologist**  
 haematoloġus, i m  
 ~ **children's diseases, pediatrician**  
 paediāter, tri m  
 ~ **ear and larynx diseases, otolaryngologist,** otolaryngoloġus, i m  
 ~ **inner organs, therapist**  
 therapeutista, ae m  
 ~ **mental diseases, psychiatrist**  
 psychiāter, tri m  
 ~ **tumorous diseases, oncologist**  
 oncolōġus, i m  
 ~ **tuberculosis, phthisiologist**  
 phthisiāter, tri m  
**spondylopathy, any disease of the vertebrae** spondylopathia, ae f  
**state** status, us f  
**a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodentia**  
 oligodentia, ae f  
**a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia**  
 erythropenia, ae f  
**stenosis, narrowing or stricture of an orifice or of the lumen**

**of a hollow or tubular organ**  
 stenōsis, is f  
**stomach** gaster, tris f  
**stomatology, branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of the oral cavity** stomatologia, ae f  
**stomatitis, inflammation of the oral cavity,** stomatītis, itīdis f  
**subcutaneous** subcutaneous a, um  
**a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli, thromboembolism**  
 thromboēbolismus, i m  
**superficial** superficiālis, e  
**suppurative, pus-forming**  
 suppuratīvus, a, um  
**symblepharon, adhesion of the eyelid to the eyeball**  
 symblephāron, i n  
**symptom, the consciousness of a disturbance in a bodily function** symptōma, ātis n  
**syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease**  
 syndrōmum, i n

**T**  
**tachyphagia, abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia**  
 tachyphagia, ae f  
**therapist, specialist for treating diseases of inner organs**  
 therapeutista, ae m  
**thromboembolism, a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli**  
 thromboēbolismus, i m  
**thrombosis, intravascular coagulation during life producing a thrombus**  
 thrombōsis, is f

**tissue** *textus, us m*  
**tomography, body-section radiography** *tomographia, ae f*  
**tongue** *lingua, ae f*  
**tonsillitis, inflammation of the tonsil** *tonsillītis, itīdis f*  
**tonsillectomy, surgical excision of a tonsil** *tonsillectomia, ae f*  
**toxicosis, the pathological condition caused by the absorption of poisons** *toxicōsis, is f*  
**transfusion, the introduction of sterile fluids such as blood, plasma, serum and other solutions into the blood vessels of the circulatory system** *transfusio, ōnis f*  
**transplantation, the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing the function** *transplantatio, ōnis f*  
**trauma, injury** *trauma, ātis n*  
**treatment by means of medical plants, phytotherapy** *phytotherapia, ae f*  
**treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors, physiotherapy** *physiotherapia, ae f*  
**tuberculosis** *tuberculōsis, is f*  
**tumor, tumor** *tumor, ōris m*  
**typhlocele, a hernia involving the caecum** *typhlocēle, es f*

## U

**ulcer, a localized necrotic lesion of the skin or a mucous surface** *ulcus, ěris n*

**ulceration, the process of formation of an ulcer** *ulceratio, ōnis f*  
**ultrasonic, ultrasound** *ultrasonarius, a, um*

## V

**valve** *valva, ae f*  
**viral** *virālis, e*

## X

**xerostomia, dryness of the mouth due to failure of the salivary gland** *xerostomia, ae f*  
**the X-ray examination of breast, mammography** *mammographia, ae f*  
**the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart, angiocardiology** *angiocardiology, ae f*

## W

**wart, a circumscribed, cutaneous excrescence having a papilliferous surface** *verrūca, ae f*  
**wound** *vulnus, ěris n*

## MEDICAL PROFESSIONAL EXPRESSIONS

1. Abactus venter	<i>Artificially induced abortion</i>
2. Abalienatio mentis	<i>Insanity; mental derangement</i>
3. Ad aurem (ad aur.)	<i>At the ear</i>
4. Ad libitum (ad lib.)	<i>At pleasure, freely</i>
5. Ad usum externum (internum)	<i>To be taken externally (internally); for external (internal) use</i>
6. Alienatio partis	<i>Gangrene</i>
7. Alternis diēbus (alt. d.)	<i>Every other day</i>
8. Alternis horis (a. h.)	<i>Every other hour</i>
9. Ante meridiem (a. m.)	<i>Morning, before noon</i>
10. Ante mortem	<i>Before death</i>
11. Ante partum	<i>Before childbirth</i>
12. Ante prandium (a. p.)	<i>Before dinner</i>
13. Auris dextra (a. d.)	<i>Right ear</i>
14. Auris laevis (sinistra) (a. l., a. s.)	<i>Left ear</i>
15. Aures utrae	<i>Both ears</i>
16. Bipāra	<i>A woman who has had born two children at separate births</i>
17. Bis in die (b. i. d.)	<i>Twice a day</i>
18. Compos mentis	<i>Of sound mind</i>
19. Dolōres vagi	<i>Wandering pains</i>
20. Facies hippocratīca	<i>The appearance of a dying person described by Hippocrates: a pale or livid face with dull sunken eyes, pinched nose, hollow cheeks and temples, openmouth and dropped lower jaw</i>
21. Habitus aegrōti	<i>The general physical appearance of a diseased person; habit</i>
22. Horrīda cutis (= cutis anserīna)	<i>Goose flesh</i>
23. Impotentia coēundi	<i>Sexual impotence in the male</i>
24. Impotentia erigendi	<i>Sexual impotence due to lack of the power of erection of the penis</i>
25. Impotentia generandi	<i>Inability to reproduce</i>
26. In articūlo mortis	<i>At the instant of death</i>
27. In extrēmīs	<i>At the point of death</i>
28. In situ	<i>1. In the normal, natural or original position 2. In a given place</i>
29. Inter alia	<i>Among the other</i>

30. In utēro	<i>Within the uterus</i>
31. In vacuo	<i>In a vacuum</i>
32. In vitro	<i>Within a glass vessel; applied to changes taking place in the test-tube method of investigation</i>
33. In vivo	<i>Within the living organism</i>
34. Intra vitam	<i>During life</i>
35. Locum tenens	<i>A medical practitioner who acts as deputy for another</i>
36. Locus minōris resistantiae	<i>The place of least resistance (an organ or tissue most likely to be a particular disease)</i>
37. Lusus natūrae	<i>A teratism or other freak of nature</i>
38. Malum aegyptīcum	<i>Diphtheria (literally — Egyptian evil)</i>
39. Malum arteriārum senīle	<i>Senile arteriosclerosis (literally — senile evil of arteries)</i>
40. Malum cadūcum	<i>Epilepsy (literally — falling evil)</i>
41. Malum venereum	<i>Syphilis (literally — venereal evil)</i>
42. Minīmum audibīle	<i>The auditory threshold; the least sound that can be heard</i>
43. Minīmum cognoscibīle	<i>The visibility threshold for recognizing shapes</i>
44. Minīmum sensibīle	<i>The threshold of consciousness</i>
45. Muscae volitantes	<i>The appearance in the fields of vision of variously shaped figures caused by defect of the vitreous humor (literally — flying flies)</i>
46. Noli me tangēre	<i>An old but colorful name for rodent ulcer (literally – do not touch me)</i>
47. Non compos mentis	<i>A person who is not sufficiently sound of mind to manage his own affairs</i>
48. Nostrum	<i>A quack remedy or a medicine the ingredients of which are kept secret</i>
49. Nullipāra	<i>A woman who has not given birth to a child</i>
50. Oculū dexter (OD, o. d.)	<i>Right eye</i>
51. Omnībus alternis horis (o. alt. hor.)	<i>Every other hour</i>
52. Omni mane (o. m.)	<i>Every morning</i>
53. Omni nocte (o. n.)	<i>Every night</i>
54. Per rectum (p. r.)	<i>Per rectum (through the rectum)</i>
55. Post meridiem (p. m.)	<i>Evening or afternoon</i>
56. Post mortem	<i>After death</i>
57. Post partum	<i>After childbirth</i>
58. Post prandium	<i>After dinner</i>
59. Potentia coeundi	<i>The capacity to have sexual intercourse</i>

60. Potentia concipiendi	<i>The capacity to conceive</i>
61. Potentia generandi	<i>The power to beget children</i>
62. Primigravīda	<i>One who is pregnant for the first time</i>
63. Primipāra	<i>A woman who has had one child</i>
64. Prognōsis anceps	<i>An uncertain prognosis</i>
65. Prognōsis fausta	<i>A good prognosis</i>
66. Prognōsis infausta	<i>An unfavorable prognosis</i>
67. Prognōsis quoad vitam	<i>An opinion as to whether the patient will live</i>
68. Pro ratiōne aetātis (p. r. aet.)	<i>According to age</i>
69. Pro re nata (p. r. n.)	<i>Occasionally, when required</i>
70. Pubertas plena	<i>The attainment of full sexual maturity</i>
71. Pubertas praecox	<i>Puberty occurring at an abnormally early age</i>
72. Quantum libet (= quantum placet)	<i>As much as you please</i>
73. Quaque hora (q. q. h.)	<i>Every hour</i>
74. Quater in die (q. i. d.)	<i>Four times a day</i>
75. Secundigravīda	<i>A woman who is pregnant for the second time</i>
76. Secundipāra	<i>A woman who has had 2 children, in two different pregnancies</i>
77. Status asthmaticus	<i>A severe and continuous attack of asthma in which there is marked dispnoea and finally exhaustion and collaps</i>
78. Status convulsivus sive epilepticus	<i>Repeated and prolonged epileptic seizures without recovery of consciousness between attacks</i>
79. Status praesens	<i>The present condition</i>
80. Ter de die (t. d. d.)	<i>Thrice a day</i>
81. Unipāra	<i>A woman who has given birth once only</i>
82. Vix conservātrix	<i>The innate strength of an organism enabling it to withstand disease</i>
83. Vix medicātrix natūrae	<i>The natural ability of the organism to prevail over disease without external assistance</i>
84. Vis vitae (vitālis)	<i>The life force</i>

## LATIN PROVERBS AND QUOTATIONS

1. Aes debitōrem leve, grave inimīcum facit	<i>If you want to keep a friend, never borrow, never lend</i>
2. Amīcus certus in re incerta cernitur	<i>A friend in need is a friend indeed</i>
3. Amor non est medicabilis herbis	<i>No herb will cure love</i>
4. Amor tussisque non celantur	<i>Love and cough cannot be hidden</i>
5. Aquila muscas non captat	<i>An eagle doesn't catch the flies</i>
6. Arte et humanitāte, labōre et scientia	<i>By art and humanity, by labor and knowledge</i>
7. Audiātur et altēra pars	<i>Let's hear the opposite side!</i>
8. Aurōra Muis amīca	<i>He that will thrive, must rise at five</i>
9. Bis dat qui cito dat	<i>He gives twice who gives in a trice</i>
10. Bona valetūdo melior est quam maxīmae divitiāe	<i>Good health is above wealth</i>
11. Cogitātiōnes posteriōres saepe sunt meliōres	<i>Second thoughts are the best</i>
12. Cogito ergo sum	<i>I think, therefore I am</i>
13. Consuetūdo est altēra natūra	<i>Custom is second nature</i>
14. Copia non est inopia	<i>Store is no sore</i>
15. Cum promisēras, facias	<i>Promise is a debt</i>
16. De gustibus non est disputandum	<i>Tastes are not to be argued</i>
17. De mortuis aut bene aut nihil	<i>Speak nothing but good of the dead</i>
18. Diabōlus non est tam ater, ac pingitur	<i>The devil is not so black as he is painted</i>
19. Dictum – factum	<i>Said and done</i>
20. Dies levat lucrum	<i>Time heals most sorrows</i>
21. Divīde et impēra	<i>Divide and rule</i>
22. Domus propria domus optīma	<i>My house is my castle. (East or west, home is best)</i>
23. Dum spiro spero	<i>As long as I breathe, I hope</i>
24. Duos qui lepōres sequitur, neutrum capit	<i>If you run after two hares, you will catch neither</i>
25. Dura lex sed lex	<i>The law is the law and must be obeyed</i>
26. Experientia est optīma magistra (= usus est optīmus magister)	<i>Experience is the best teacher</i>
27. Ebrietas est voluntaria insania	<i>Drunkenness is nothing but voluntary madness</i>
28. E cantu dignoscitur avis	<i>A bird may be known by its song</i>
29. Equi donāti dentes non sunt inspiciendi	<i>Don't look a gift horse in the mouth</i>

30. Errāre humānum est	<i>It's human to err</i>
31. Est avis in dextra melior guam quattuor extra	<i>A bird in the hand is worth one hundred in flight</i>
32. Facīle dictu, difficīle factu	<i>Easier said than done</i>
33. Facta, non verba	<i>Better to do well than to say well</i>
34. Festīna lente	<i>Make haste slowly</i>
35. Finis corōnat opus	<i>All is well that ends well</i>
36. Fronti nulla fides	<i>Appearances are deceitful</i>
37. Fortes fortūna adjūvat	<i>Fortune favours the brave</i>
38. Homīnes amplius oculis credunt quam aurībus	<i>A picture is worth a thousand words</i>
39. Homo a se ortus	<i>A self-made man</i>
40. Homo doctus in se divitias habet	<i>The wealth of the mind is the only true wealth</i>
41. Homo est aņimal sociāle	<i>Man is by nature a political animal</i>
42. Homo homīni lupus est	<i>Man is a wolf to man</i>
43. Homo propōnit, sed Deus dispōnit	<i>Man proposes but God disposes</i>
44. Homo sum, humāni nihil a me alienum esse puto	<i>I am a man, I count nothing human alien to me</i>
45. Ignorantia non est argumentum	<i>Lack of knowledge is no excuse (= Ignorance is no argument)</i>
46. In medio stat virtus	<i>Virtue stands in the middle</i>
47. Ira furor brevis est	<i>Anger is short madness</i>
48. Labor et patientia omnia vincunt	<i>Diligence is the mother of success</i>
49. Mala herba cito crescit	<i>Great weeds grow apace</i>
50. Manus manum lavat	<i>One hand washes the other</i>
51. Mare verbōrum, gutta rerum	<i>Great boast, small roast</i>
52. Medīcus curat, natūra sanat	<i>The physician heals, nature convalesces</i>
53. Mens sana in corpōre sano	<i>A healthy mind in a healthy body</i>
54. Nemo sine vitio est	<i>No one is without a fault</i>
55. Ne diffēras in crastīnum	<i>Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today</i>
56. Ne noceas, si juvare non potes	<i>Do no harm, if you can not help</i>
57. Nomen est omen	<i>The name is the sign</i>
58. Ne Juppiter quidem omnībus placet	<i>He who pleased everybody died before he was born</i>
59. Nihil volenti difficīle est	<i>Anything is possible if you wish hard enough</i>
60. Non est fumus absque igne	<i>There is no smoke without fire</i>

61. Non est via in medicīna sine lingua Latīna	<i>There is no way in medicine without Latin</i>
62. Non scholae, sed vitae discimus	<i>We learn not for school but for life</i>
63. Nulla aetas ad discendum sera	<i>It is never too late to learn</i>
64. Nulla regūla sine exceptione	<i>There is no rule without exception</i>
65. Nulla dies sine linea	<i>Not a day without a line</i>
66. Nullum malum sine aliquo bono	<i>No great loss without some small gain</i>
67. Omnia fluunt, omnia mutantur	<i>Everything flows and everything changes</i>
68. Omnia mea mecum porto	<i>All I have, I carry with me</i>
69. O tempōra, o mores!	<i>What times! What customs!</i>
70. Otium post negotium	<i>Work done, have your fun</i>
71. Pacta sunt servanda	<i>Agreements should be obeyed</i>
72. Paulātīm summa petūntur	<i>Learn to creep before you leap</i>
73. Per aspēra ad astra	<i>Through the thorns (hard-ships) to the stars!</i>
74. Pigritia est mater vitiōrum	<i>Idleness is the mother of all evil</i>
75. Plenus venter non studet libenter	<i>A full stomach is deaf to learning</i>
76. Potius sero quam nunquam	<i>Better is late than never</i>
77. Primum noli nocēre	<i>First, do no harm</i>
78. Principium dimidium totius	<i>Well begun is half done</i>
79. Procul ex oculis – procul ex mente	<i>Out of sight, out of mind</i>
80. Quem Deus perdere vult, dementat prius	<i>Whom God wishes to ruin, he first deprives him of reason</i>
81. Quidquid latet apparēbit	<i>What is done by night appears by day</i>
82. Quidquid Latīne dictum sit, altum vidētur	<i>Anything said in Latin sounds profound</i>
83. Qui non est nobiscum adversus nos est	<i>He that is not with us is against us</i>
84. Qui quaerit, repērit	<i>He will find who is searching</i>
85. Qui scribit, bis legit	<i>He who writes reads twice</i>
86. Qui seminat mala, metet mala	<i>The ill you do will rebound upon you</i>
87. Qui tacet consentire vidētur	<i>Silence gives consent</i>
88. Quod erat demonstrandum	<i>Which was to be proved</i>
89. Quod licet Jovi, non licet bovi	<i>What Jupiter is allowed to do cattle are not</i>
90. Quot capita, tot sententiae	<i>So many men, so many minds</i>
91. Radices litterarum amarae, fructus dulces	<i>Whatever is good to know is difficult to learn</i>
92. Repetitio est mater studiōrum	<i>Repeating is the mother of learning</i>
93. Saltare ad tibiam alicujus	<i>To dance after somebody's tune</i>

94. Scientia potentia est	<i>Knowledge is power</i>
95. Scio me nihil scire	<i>I know that I know nothing</i>
96. Sero venientibus ossa	<i>There is nothing left for the late-comers</i>
97. Sine ira et studio	<i>Without ill-will and without favor</i>
98. Sine labore non erit panis in ore	<i>No pains, no gains</i>
99. Si vis amari, ama!	<i>To be loved, love!</i>
100. Suae quisque fortunae faber est	<i>Each man is the maker of his own fortune</i>
101. Sudore et sanguine, opera et studio	<i>By blood, toil, tears and sweat</i>
102. Suis quaeque temporibus	<i>There is a time and place for everything</i>
103. Suum cuique	<i>To each his own</i>
104. Tamdiu discendum est, quamdiu discendum vivis	<i>Live and learn</i>
105. Tantum possumus, quantum scimus	<i>We can do as much as we know</i>
106. Temperantia est custos vitae	<i>Excesses destroy our powers</i>
107. Tempora mutantur et nos mutamur in illis	<i>The times change and we are changing with them</i>
108. Temporis filia veritas	<i>Truth is a daughter of time</i>
109. Totus mundus agit histriōnem	<i>All the world's a stage</i>
110. Ubi concordia ibi victoria	<i>Where is the unity, there is the victory</i>
111. Umbram suam timere	<i>He is afraid of his own shadow</i>
112. Una hirundo non facit ver	<i>One swallow makes no summer</i>
113. Ut salūtas, ita salutabēris	<i>As the call, so the echo</i>
114. Verba docent, exempla trahunt	<i>Words are teaching, examples are pulling</i>
115. Verum amicum pecunia non parābis	<i>Money cannot buy friendship</i>
116. Vincuntur molli pectōra dura prece	<i>A word warmly said gives comfort even to a cat</i>
117. Vox popūli — vox Dei	<i>The voice of the people is the God's voice</i>

## THE INTERNATIONAL STUDENTS' ANTHEM "GAUDEAMUS"

**Gaudeāmus igītur,  
Juvēnes dum sumus!  
Post jucundam juventūtem,  
Post molestam senectūtem  
Nos habēbit humus. (bis)**

Let us rejoice therefore  
While we are young!  
After a pleasant youth,  
After a troubling old age  
The earth will have us.

Ubi sunt qui ante nos  
In mundo fuēre?  
Transeas ad supēros,  
Transeas ad infēros,  
Hos si vis vidēre. (bis)

Where are they who before us  
Were in the world?  
You may go up to the gods,  
You may cross into the underworld,  
If you wish to see them.

Vita nostra brevis est,  
Brevi finiētur:  
Venit mors velocīter,  
Rapit nos atrocīter,  
Nemīni parcētur. (bis)

Our life is brief,  
It will shortly end:  
Death comes quickly,  
Snatches us cruelly,  
It spares no one.

**Vivat Academia!  
Vivant professōres!  
Vivat membrum quodlibet,  
Vivant membra quaelibet,  
Semper sint in flore! (bis)**

Long live the academy!  
Long live the teachers!  
Long live each student!  
Long live all students!  
May they always flourish!

**Vivant omnes virgīnes,  
Gracīles, formōsae!  
Vivant et muliēres,  
Tenēre, amabīles,  
Bonaē, laboriōsae. (bis)**

Long live all girls,  
Slender and beautiful!  
Long live wives as well,  
Tender, loveable,  
Good and productive.

**Vivat et Respublica  
Et qui illam regunt!  
Vivat nostra civitas,  
Maecenātum caritas,  
Qui nos hic protēgunt! (bis)**

Long live the state as well  
As they who rule it!  
Long live our city  
[And] the charity of benefactors  
Who protect us here!

Pereat tristitia,  
Pereant dolōres!  
Pereat diabōlus,  
Quivis antiburschius  
Atque irrisōres!

Let sadness perish,  
Let sorrows perish!  
Let the devil perish,  
Let [perish] whoever who is anti-student.  
As well those who mock us!

**The most popular stanzas nowadays are typed in black type**

## LITERATURE

- Англо-русский* медицинский словарь : более 90 000 терминов / сост. : И. Ю. Марковина [и др.]. М. : Медицинское информационное агенство, 2008. 896 с.
- Волмянская, О. А.* Англо-русский словарь для специалистов-медиков / О. А. Волмянская. Минск : Асар, 2000. 304 с.
- Капитула, Л. С.* Латинский : учеб. / Л. С. Капитула. Минск : БГМУ, 2010. 279 с.
- Международная* анатомическая номенклатура (с официальным списком русских эквивалентов) / под ред. Л. Л. Колесникова. М. : Медицина, 2003. 424 с.
- Нечай, М. Н.* Латинский язык и стоматологическая терминология : учеб. пособие для студ. стом. ф-тов вузов / М. Н. Нечай. Тюмень : Печатник, 2010. 256 с.
- Русско-англо-латинский* словарь крылатых слов и выражений / сост. А. С. Альбов. М. : АСТ ; СПб : Сова, 2006. 606 с.
- Цисык, А. З.* Латинский язык : учеб. для студ. учреждений, обеспечивающих получение высш. мед. образования / А. З. Цисык. 2-е изд., испр. и доп. Минск : Тетра-Системс, 2009. 448 с.
- Цисык, А. З.* Латинский язык : учеб. / А. З. Цисык. Минск : БГМУ, 2009. 196 с.
- Цисык, А. З.* Латинский язык = The Latin Language : учеб. пособие / А. З. Цисык ; пер. на англ. яз. А. З. Цисык. Минск : БГМУ, 2010. 212 с.
- Arnaudov, G.* Terminologia medica polyglotta. Медицинская терминология на пяти языках / Arnaudov. София : Медицина и физкультура, 1979. 943 с.
- Butterworths Medical Dictionary.* 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. London – Boston – Sydney – Wellington – Durban – Toronto : Butterworth, 1979. 1942 p.
- Kondratiev, D.* Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology for Medical Students / Д. К. Кондратьев, О. Е. Вылегжанина, Ю. В. Князева. Гродно : ГрГМУ, 2005. 250 с.
- Stadman's Medical Dictionary.* 25<sup>th</sup> ed. Baltimore – Hong Kong – London – Sydney : Williams and Wilkins, 1989. 1751 p.

## CONTENTS

Preface .....	3
Introduction into the subject.....	4
<b>PART I. PHONETIC RULES OF PRONUNCIATION.....</b>	<b>7</b>
Lesson 1. The Latin alphabet. The pronunciation of vowels, consonants and letter combinations .....	7
§ 1. Latin alphabet.....	7
§ 2. Division of Latin sounds .....	8
§ 3. Pronunciation of vowels .....	8
§ 4. Pronunciation of two vowels combination .....	9
§ 5. Pronunciation of consonants.....	9
§ 6. Pronunciation of consonants combinations .....	11
§ 7. Pronunciation of some letter combinations .....	11
§ 8. Accent in the words, consisting of two syllables.....	11
§ 9 Accent in polysyllabic words. Length and brevity of second end syllable.....	12
§ 10. Long suffixes.....	12
§ 11. Short suffixes .....	13
§ 12. Suffixes with similar quality of vowel in all parts of medical terminology .....	13
§ 13. The way of accent determination when the second end vowel isn't a part of a long or a short suffixe .....	14
§ 14. Some rules of syllable length determining .....	14
§ 15. The rules of syllable brevity .....	14
§ 16. Exercises .....	15
<b>PART II. ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY .....</b>	<b>18</b>
Lesson 2. The structure of latin anatomical terms. Noun and its grammar categories .....	18
§ 17. The Latin terminology in Anatomy and its structure.....	18
§ 18. Grammar categories of noun.....	19
§ 19. Dictionary form of nouns .....	19
§ 20. The stem of the noun and the way to determine it.....	20
§ 21. Description of declensions.....	20
§ 22. Exercises .....	22
§ 23. Vocabulary to lesson 2 .....	22
Lesson 3. Adjectives and theirs dictionary form. Adjective and noun agreement .....	24
§ 24. Introductory information about adjectives in Latin .....	24

§ 25. 1 <sup>st</sup> group of adjectives .....	24
§ 26. 2 <sup>nd</sup> group of adjectives .....	25
§ 27. Adjective and noun agreemen .....	27
§ 28. The comparative degree .....	28
§ 29. Comparative forms in Anatomical Terminology .....	29
§ 30. The superlative degree .....	30
§ 31. Peculiarities of the use of the comparison degrees of the adjectives magnus, a, um and parvus, a, um in Latin anatomical terminology .....	30
§ 32. Exercises.....	31
§ 33. Vocabulary to lesson 3.....	31
Lesson 4. Nominative plural of nouns and adjectives.....	34
§ 34. Nominative Plural Endings of Nouns and Adjectives.....	34
§ 35. Abbreviations of Nominative Plural forms in Anatomical Terms .....	35
§ 36. Exercises.....	35
§ 37. Vocabulary to lesson 4.....	36
Lesson 5. Genitive plural of nouns and adjectives.....	37
§ 38. Genitive Plural Endings of Nouns and Adjectives .....	37
§ 39. Exercises.....	39
§ 40. Vocabulary to lesson 5.....	39
Lesson 6. Accusative singular and plural of the nouns and adjectives. Prepositions used with the accusative .....	41
§ 41. Accusative singular and plural endings .....	41
§ 42. Prepositions used with the Accusative .....	42
§ 43. Prefixes formed from the prepositions used with the Accusative.....	43
§ 44. Exersices.....	44
§ 45. Vocabulary to lesson 6.....	44
Lesson 7. Ablative singular and plural of the nouns and adjectives. Prepositions used with the ablative .....	46
§ 46. Ablative and its formation.....	46
§ 47. Propositions with the Ablative .....	47
§ 48. Prefixes formed from the prepositions used with the Ablative.....	48
§ 49. Exercises.....	48
§ 50. Vocabulary to lesson 7.....	49
§ 51. Summary table of declensions and case endings .....	49
§ 52. Model (sample) of the final test in anatomical terminology.....	50
Latin-english vocabulary .....	51
English-latin vocabulary .....	57

PART III. PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY .....	62
Lesson 8. Introduction to the latin pharmaceutical terminology.....	62
§ 53. General information on the Latin pharmaceutical Terminology .....	62
§ 54. The drug form names .....	63
§ 55. Components of medical plants.....	64
§ 56. Medicinal plants in the pharmaceutical terms .....	65
§ 57. The morphological structure of one-word Latin drug names.....	65
§ 58. Some rules of building multiword Pharmaceutical terms .....	66
§ 59. Exercices.....	67
§ 60. Vocabulary to lesson 8 .....	67
Lesson 9. Latin in the medical prescription. Standard verb forms indicating order and instructions in making up the latin part of prescription.	
General rules of making up the latin part of prescription .....	68
§ 61. Current use of Latin in medical prescription .....	68
§ 62. The Imperative verb forms used in a simple medical prescription.....	68
§ 63. The Conjunctive forms in medical prescription .....	69
§ 64. The structure of a complex medical prescription.....	70
§ 65. Some peculiarities of quantity expression in the medical prescription .....	70
§ 66. Some important rules for making up the Latin part of medical prescription.....	71
§ 67. Morphological roots of plant origin indicating alkaloids and glycosides with different pharmaceutical effects.....	71
§ 68. Exercises .....	72
§ 69. Vocabulary to lesson 9 .....	73
Lesson 10. The use of the accusative of some pharmaceutical forms in the first line of a medical prescription .....	74
§ 70. General information on the use of the Accusative of the pharmaceutical forms in a medical prescription.....	74
§ 71. The prescription of tablets in the Accusative form.....	75
§ 72. The prescription of drops in the Accusative form .....	75
§ 73. The prescription of ophthalmic films .....	76
§ 74. The prescription of suppositories in the Accusative case .....	76
§ 75. The prescription of aerosols in the Accusative case .....	77
§ 76. Morphological roots .....	77
§ 77. Exercises .....	78
§ 78. Vocabulary to lesson 10 .....	79
Lesson 11. Latin names of chemical elements, acids, oxides, hydroxides, peroxides.....	80

§ 79. Latin names of chemical elements .....	80
§ 80. Latin names of acids .....	81
§ 81. Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides .....	82
§ 82. Morphological roots reflecting chemical information.....	82
§ 83. Exercises.....	83
§ 84. Vocabulary to lesson 11 .....	85
Lesson 12. Latin names of salts on the labels of drug names and in medical prescriptions .....	86
§ 85. Latin names of salts, whose anions include oxygen.....	86
§ 86. Latin names of salts, whose anions don't contain oxygen.....	87
§ 87. Anion names of basic salts.....	87
§ 88. Two-component names of potassium and sodium salts .....	87
§ 89. Morphological roots reflecting pharmaceutical information .....	88
§ 90. Exercises.....	88
§ 91. Vocabulary to lesson 12.....	90
§ 92. Model (Sample) of the final test in pharmaceutical terminology .....	91
Latin-english vocabulary .....	92
English-latin vocabulary .....	95
<b>PART IV. CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY.....</b>	<b>98</b>
Lesson 13. Introduction to the Latin clinical terminology. One-word terms and their morphological structure. Initial and final morphological elements used for word building. Names of branches of medicine and medical specialists. Names of medical examinations.....	98
§ 93. General remarks on the Latin clinical terminology.....	98
§ 94. The morphological structure of one-word clinical terms .....	99
§ 95. Some remarks on the word stressing in clinical names .....	100
§ 96. Initial and final root elements.....	100
§ 97. The structure and vocabulary of multiword clinical terms .....	101
§ 98. The names of the common branches of clinical medicine.....	102
§ 99. Names of medical specialists .....	102
§ 100. Some notes on the names of medical specialists in Latin and English .....	103
§ 101. The names of medical examinations and methods of treatment .....	103
§ 102. Table of initial root elements .....	104
§ 103. Table of final root elements .....	104
§ 104. Exercises.....	105
§ 105. Vocabulary to lesson 13.....	106
Lesson 14. Names of function disorders, pathological processes and abnormal conditions.....	110

§ 106. Composition of one-word names of functional disorders .....	110
§ 107. Composition of one-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions .....	111
§ 108. Table of initial Greek roots and their Latin equivalents.....	112
§ 109. Table of final root elements .....	113
§ 110. Exercises .....	114
§ 111. Vocabulary to lesson 14 .....	115
Lesson 15. Names of qualitative and quantitative abnormalities in morphological structures and physiological processes .....	119
§ 112. Increase and decrease of different quantitative conditions .....	119
§ 113. Increase or decrease in dimension of anatomical and histological structures .....	119
§ 114. Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures .....	120
§ 115. Table of initial root elements .....	120
§ 116. Table of final roots elements .....	121
§ 117. Exercises .....	122
§ 118. Vocabulary to lesson 15 .....	123
Lesson 16. Names of inflammatory processes which occur in organs and tissues. One-word names of endogenous pathological changes and malformations .....	127
§ 119. Names of inflammatory conditions .....	127
§ 120. Names of pathological cavities .....	128
§ 121. Names of tumors .....	128
§ 122. Names of concretions.....	129
§ 123. Table of initial roots elements.....	130
§ 124. Table of final roots elements .....	131
§ 125. Exercises .....	131
§ 126. Vocabulary to lesson 16 .....	132
§ 127. Model (sample) of the final test in clinical terminology .....	135
Latin-english vocabulary .....	136
English-latin dictionary .....	145
Medical professional expressions .....	155
Latin proverbs, saying and quotations .....	158
The international students' anthem "Gaudeamus" .....	162
Literature .....	163